# chronos

Clea F. Rees<sup>\*</sup>

v0.9.3 (svn 11096)

### Abstract

chronos is a  $IATEX 2_{\varepsilon}$  package, based on PGF/TikZ, for typesetting timelines or chronologies. Externalisation is supported out-of-the-box with memoize. The package developed from two sources: first, the creation of a timeline for use in teaching<sup>1</sup> and, second, questions on tex.stackexchange.com concerning obstacles encountered in using existing packages. This package might be considered an attempt to use the former to partially remedy the latter. It also means both the code and the user-interface contain strange and tangled regions where the wild errors may grow.

\*Bug tracker: codeberg.org/cfr/chronos/issues | Code: codeberg.org/cfr/chronos | Mirror: github.com/cfr42/chronos <sup>1</sup>See this answer on T<sub>E</sub>X StackExchange or view the PDF.



Figure 1: Chronos development: a chronos timeline (sections 6 and 8.4) with chronos style blues below (section 7.1.2) and custom styles tag left, tag post and tag right (section 13.3).

# Contents

1	Raison d'être	3						
<b>2</b>	Caveats, Assumptions & Limitations	3						
3	Typesetting a Timeline	5						
4	Loading the Package	10						
5	Invocation							
6	Chronos Anatomy         6.1       Chronos Timeline         6.2       Chronos Additional Element Types         6.2.1       Primary Types         6.2.2       Secondary (Sub-)Elements         6.3       Chronos Coordinate and Node Names         6.4       Chronos Layers	<b>12</b> 12 14 15 15 15						
7	Chronos Schemes and Styles         7.1 Chronos Styles         7.1.1 'On Line' Styles         7.1.2 'Off Line' Styles         7.1.3 'No Year' Styles         7.2 Chronos Colour Schemes	<ol> <li>17</li> <li>17</li> <li>17</li> <li>19</li> <li>21</li> <li>24</li> </ol>						
8	Configuration         8.1       Documentation Notes         8.1.1       Font Conventions         8.1.2       Keys and Values         8.1.3       Key Specifications         8.1.4       Syntax Notes         8.1.5       Dimension Notes         8.1.6       Date Specification Notes         8.1.7       Colour Notes	<ul> <li>29</li> <li>30</li> <li>30</li> <li>31</li> <li>31</li> <li>32</li> <li>33</li> <li>34</li> <li>34</li> </ul>						
	8.2 Dates       8.2.1 Input         8.2.2 Output       8.2.3 The Problem of the Non-Existent Year         8.3 Basic Colours       8.4 Timeline         8.4.1 Timeline Dates       8.4.1 Timeline Dates	34 34 35 38 40 41 41						
	8.4.2       Timeline Dimensions         8.4.3       Timeline Marks and Years         8.4.4       Timeline Fonts         8.4.5       Timeline Colours         8.4.6       Timeline Style         8.5       Frame         8.6       Placing Things: Levels & Coordinates	$\begin{array}{c} 42 \\ 45 \\ 50 \\ 51 \\ 52 \\ 53 \\ 54 \end{array}$						
	8.6.1       Levels         8.6.2       Chronos Coordinates         8.6.3       Miscellaneous         8.7       Headings         8.7.1       Example         8.7.2       Headings Configuration	54 55 55 55 56 57						
	8.8 Colours	57						

		8.8.1 8.8.2 8.8.3 8.8.4	Colour Rotation	58 58 59 60
9	Add		ements to the Timeline	61
	9.1		g Connectable Elements	61
		9.1.1	Timeline-Connectable Elements	61
	0.0	9.1.2	Adding Other Connectable Elements	64
	9.2		g Non-Connectable Elements	65 67
	$9.3 \\ 9.4$		onal Elements: Local/Global Configuration         onal Elements: Local/Global Configuration	$\begin{array}{c} 67 \\ 72 \end{array}$
	9.4	9.4.1	Specialist Fonts for Text Tags	76
	9.5		onal Elements: Global Configuration	77
	9.6		g Connections, Using Colours and Accessing Styles	82
	0.0			
10	Dra	wing o	on Chronos Layers	83
11	$\mathbf{Ext}$	ernalis	ing Chronos Timelines with Memoize	84
12	Def	erring	Code	85
	12.1	Additi	onal Ti $k$ Z	85
13	Cus	tom Se	chemes and Styles	86
			ng Chronos Colour Schemes	86
			How Colour Schemes are Processed	88
	13.2	Definir	ng Chronos Styles	88
			How (Not) to Customise Colours	90
			How to Rotate Years	92
			Hashes	93
			Timeline Arrow	94
	10.0		Styles and Automemoization	96
	13.3	Dennii	ng Styles for Additional Elements	96
14	Deb	ougging		98
15		npatibi		102
	15.1	Compa	atibility with Code from $T_{EX}$ SE Answers	103
In	$\mathbf{dex}$			106

# 1 Raison d'être

Chronos aims to make it easy

- to specify timelines covering from days to centuries;
- to customise a timeline's appearance using the standard key-value syntax familiar to users of TikZ;
- to define new timeline styles in a straightforward manner;
- to utilise a range of timeline styles provided out-of-the-box, including some based on those offered by other packages and/or featured on tex.stackexchange.com.

# 2 Caveats, Assumptions & Limitations

First, the caveats ...

**Chronos** is *experimental*. Future releases will not make significant backwards-incompatible changes to documented features of the user interface without good reason. If such changes are made, a compatibility option will be offered, unless there is extremely good reason not to do so. This applies only to documented features. It applies to neither undocumented features nor the implementation details of those documented.

Chronos makes some use of undocumented internal PGF/TikZ commands.

Chronos uses etoolbox to patch certain internal PGF/TikZ commands. While some of these changes, such as modifications to  $rectangle^2$  are applied only locally, others, including changes to the tikzpicture initialisation code<sup>3</sup>, are made globally.

Chronos has known incompatibilities with certain standard PGF/TikZ libraries (section 15).

Chronos has unknown incompatibilities with other standard and non-standard PGF/TikZ libraries and packages. These will be documented when discovered.

Chronos differs substantially from code previously published as chronos on  $T_EX$  StackExchange. In particular, the user interface has changed: chronos now uses a key-value interface rather than multiple arguments when adding things to the timeline and the timeline itself is now created by the environment chronos<sup>4</sup>. See section 15.1 for guidance on converting existing timelines.

### Caveat emptor ...

Second, (some of) the assumptions ...

Within the chronos environment, chronos assumes control over PGF/TikZ layers, disregarding any configuration setup by the user or other packages (section 6.4). This means you cannot use additional, custom layers in chronos environments unless you integrate them appropriately with chronos's changes. These changes are made locally and do not affect the use of whatever layers you please in a non-chronos environment, such as a regular tikzpicture.

### Caveat emptor ...

Third, (some of) the limitations ...

The most serious limitation, given chronos's aims (section 1), is that you cannot define styles involving chronos keys using the standard PGF/TikZ interface, if you want to use them to configure individual additional elements (sections 6 and 9). Moreover, the alternative mechanism provided has serious shortcomings (section 13.3).

Chronos cannot produce timelines covering hundreds of thousands of years or which need to distinguish temporal units less than a day. It does days, months, years and centuries; it does not do (many) millennia, hours, minutes or seconds.

In particular, chronos is not designed to deal with dates outside the current Julian period. In theory, this means any date from  $24^{\text{th}}$  November, 4714 BCE should be permissible, but in fact,  $24^{\text{th}}$  November, 4713 BCE is the first date for which the package's behaviour should be relatively well-defined<sup>5</sup>. Matters are a little different when it comes to dates in the *next* Julian period. The cut off date for these is sometime in 3268 CE, according to Wikipedia, but pgfcalendar appears to be unaware of this. This means you may be able to get away with later dates, even though they are officially beyond the scope of this package<sup>6</sup>.

Chronos draws horizontal timelines. It does not support alternative orientations. In particular, vertical timelines are not currently supported.

#### Caveat emptor ...

 $<sup>^{2}</sup>$ I am grateful to Symbol 1 for providing the code implementing this at T<sub>E</sub>X StackExchange: 385953.

 $<sup>^{3}</sup>$ I am grateful to Martin Scharrer for for this at T<sub>E</sub>X StackExchange: 56405.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup>Early versions on T<sub>E</sub>X SE actually used an environment, so this difference applies only to some chronos-based answers there. <sup>5</sup>pgfcalendar says it uses the Wikipedia method, but appears to return dates 1 year later than some Wikipedia specifies e.g. day 0 gives a date in 4713 exactly a year after Wikipedia's one in 4714. But Wikipedia itself seems inconsistent, sometimes suggesting a date in 4713 and sometimes the previous year. For current purposes, the right answer doesn't matter: what matters is that pgfcalendar's answer is consistent. This means quibbles about the start date are unimportant (unless you're drawing a timeline starting with Winter Solstice 4714 BCE, of course. If you are, you might want to look into the matter.)

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>6</sup>That is, it may work, but it isn't a bug if it doesn't.

**Finally,** the code lacks both the virtues of sophistication and simplicity, while the user interface is characterised by confusion and complexity, the documentation is spotted with lacunae and unclarities, and the index is a conglomeration of misdirection and bull shit<sup>7</sup>.

Caveat emptor ...

# 3 Typesetting a Timeline

Further details concerning loading and invocation are explained in sections 4 and 5. The overall structure chronos provides is outlined in sections 6 and 6.4. Section 7 covers simple customisation using colour schemes and chronos styles. Detailed configuration of the timeline is explained in section 8. Section 9 covers the addition of elements such as lives, events, periods, theories, info boxes and titles to timelines. In this section, we begin by looking at a simple example.

After loading **chronos** in the document preamble:

```
% in document's preamble 
\usepackage{chronos}
```

the chronos environment is available for typesetting timelines.

```
\begin{chronos}
[]
\end{chronos}
```

This takes an optional argument used to configure the timeline. This determines the size, appearance and duration of the timeline, as well as the use of headings, subheadings and frame. The body of the environment should consist of material to be added to the timeline itself, typically using chronos's commands for adding lives, events, periods, theories, theory circles, info boxes and/or main titles. It is also possible to include arbitrary TikZ code in the body of the environment, but commands need to be added to the appropriate chronos layer if they are to have their intended effects.

Suppose that we wish to typeset a timeline illustrating developments in the history of writing and printing. Having done exhaustive research utilising a single Wikipedia page, we decide our timeline should begin around 3,100BCE and end in the present. We're going to use the chronos style cronoleg, which puts year markers on the timeline itself. We decide we'd like large markers every 500 years and a smaller marker halfway between each pair of larger ones. We might, therefore, try

```
\begin{chronos}
[
    cronoleg,% load chronos style
    timeline={% configure the timeline 'line' itself
      start date={-3100},
      end date=2100,
      minor step=250,
      major step=500,
    },
    levels=10:10,
]
```

This will result in 'major' markers (marks and years) at 3,000BCE, 2,500 BCE etc. and 'minor' at 2,750BCE, 2,250BCE and so on. Note that chronos starts the timeline at 3,100BCE, but assumes we'd like the first marker at 3,000BCE. levels=10:10 will create a series of invisible nodes above and below the timeline named level 1,...,level 10 and level -1,...,level -10 respectively. The nodes are constructed so they take the same space as a 'standard' text tag of 'tag' type life created with \chronoslife. We can refer to these nodes when placing items to facilitate stacking, spacing and packing.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>7</sup>In what sense 'bull shit'? Take your pick from any of several technical philosophical senses.

Based on our exhaustive seconds-long research, we now want to add some items of interest onto our timeline. We decide we'd like to note the lives of significant figures in the development of contemporary typography, most notably Donald Knuth, as well as a few luminaries from the modern era<sup>8</sup>. We'd also like to note certain specific events, such as key publication dates, and processes of longer duration.

```
\chronosevent{%
  name=\emph{jikji},
  date=1377
}
```

This will create an event in the default style in the default location, just off the timeline. Note that the text displayed in the event's node is '*Jikji*'. The coordinate jikji is placed at the point the element is added on the border of the timeline. The circular connector created at this point is the node chronos connector jikji. The circular connector on the event's text tag is the node main connector jikji. The text tag itself is the node tag jikji. As it stands, we may not be able to actually see all these elements if the event's text tag is placed right on the border of the timeline. If text tag yshift is non-zero, chronos will shift the node but, in general, it is necessary to tell chronos where to place the text tag. This doesn't affect the placement of the event on the timeline itself.

```
\chronosevent{%
   name=\emph{jikji},
   date=1377,
   yshift=20pt,
}
```

This will place the text tag node due north of the circular connector on the timeline with a straight line connecting the circular connector nodes main connector jikji and chronos connector jikji. However, we might also want to shift the text tag node horizontally and have the connection drawn to the west or east of the text tag.

```
\chronosevent{%
   name=\emph{jikji},
   date=1377,
   yshift=20pt,
   xshift=-5pt,
   anchor=east,
}
```

will shift the text tag 5pt to the left and draw the connection up and left from the timeline to main connector jikji which is now drawn east rather than the default south.

We decide to place a second event, for which we have a precise date. This time, we use as is to tell chronos not to attempt to capitalise the text. This is necessary because we have an  $\mbox{emph}{\langle word \rangle}$  and chronos's capitalisation command can't cope with this. This also means we need to add appropriate capitalisation ourselves.

```
\chronosevent{%
  date={868-05-11},
  name={Publication of \emph{Diamond Sutra}},
  yshift=-40pt,
  xshift=20pt,
  anchor=west,
  as is,
  connectors={east,south},
}
```

Note that this event is placed below the timeline.

We decide to add some notable figures next. For this, we create elements of tag type life, beginning with the inventor of movable type, Bi Sheng.

 $<sup>^{8}\</sup>mathrm{In}$  my discipline, 'modern' means roughly the sixteenth to nineteenth centuries.

```
\chronoslife{%
  name=bi sheng,
  birth=972,
  death=1051,
  at=tag jikji.north -| bi sheng,
  connectors={east,north},
}
```

Note the use of at to place the text tag detailing the name and dates. Since this node is placed above the timeline, its anchor is south by default. at=tag jikji.north -| bi sheng aligns this anchor directly above the relevant point on the timeline (bi sheng) and just on top of tag jikji. If you want to fit many items onto your timeline, fitting them closely together is useful but you could, of course, lift the box higher if you want a bit more space.

Leaping ahead, we now want to add Donald Knuth.

```
\chronoslife{%
  name=donald knuth,
  birth={1938-01-10},
  text tag yshift=40pt,
  connectors={west,north},
}
```

Note the omission of **death** for a living person. Chronos assigns today's date internally for placement purposes, but will not typeset it when constructing the text tag<sup>9</sup> This works reasonably, but the connection from the timeline crosses the text node for the publication of the *Diamond Sutra* because chronos has placed this item below the timeline, even though there is plenty of space above. This is because, by default, chronos alternates between placement above and below the line. In this case, we decide to override the default choice.

```
\chronoslife{%
  name=donald knuth,
  birth={1938-01-10},
  text tag yshift=40pt,
  connectors={west,north},
  place above,
}
```

Note that the cronoleg rotates the colours used for elements belonging to tag types life, event and period, but not theory, but colour lists are rather subdued for events and periods. For each type of elements, one set of colours is used below and another above the timeline. These colours can be accessed later as colour  $\langle name \rangle^{10}$ .

Colour rotation can be switched on or off for particular kinds of elements, overridden for individual elements and configured by altering the colour lists chronos cycles through. These colours are tracked by copying them to new names for each element created and may be accessed using these names later. This means you can draw something in the colour assigned to Donald Knuth, say, without knowing which colour that is. If you add an element to the timeline or change the colour lists later, the drawing will use the appropriate colour. For example,

\node (pi) [colour donald knuth, font=\Huge, right=5pt of tag donald knuth.base east, anchor=base
west] {\$\pi\$};

will add a large  $\pi$  in the colour (automatically or otherwise) assigned to Knuth.

\draw [colour donald knuth] (tag donald knuth.north) ++(0pt,20pt) circle (10pt);

would draw a circle above Donald Knuth's text tag in the colour automatically assigned to Donald Knuth.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>9</sup>chronos is not the most optimistic of packages.

 $<sup>^{10}</sup>$ In most cases, you can also access items using American spelling. So color would work here. So would 11iw.

We next decide to indicate the **period** when woodblock printing was used to produce books. This is a *circa* date, so we can't use **chronos**'s automatic production of the date information, though we still need to specify dates for placement on the **timeline**. We'd still like **chronos** to format the name of the **text tag**, though, so we use **dates content** to override the automatic production of date labels.

```
\chronosperiod{%
  name=woodblock printing,
  start=600,
  end=1450,
  yshift=-20pt,
  xshift=10pt,
  anchor=west,
  dates content={c600--1450\ceyearlabel},
  place below,
}
```

If we wanted to override the formatting of the name rather than the dates, we could use

```
name=woodblock printing,
name content={WoOdBlOcK pRiNtInG},
```

If we wanted something completely different in place of the name and date information, we could instead use

```
text content={something entirely different\\--- not even about woodblocks!},
```

BCE dates require special consideration. In general, a minus indicates BCE, but chronos needs to be able to distinguish this from the hyphen between years and months or months and days in standard date specifications (section 8.2). This means either providing a full date of the form -YYYY-MM-DD, for example, or ensuring chronos expects only a partial date such as a year.

```
\chronosperiod{%
  name=proto-Elamite use of cylinder seals,
  start={{-3100}-01-01},
  end={{-2700}-12-31},
  dates content={c3000\,\bceyearlabel},
  yshift=20pt,
  connectors=north,
  connectors=east,
}
```

Here, we protect the BCE year with curly brackets, specify a default month and day. If we specified only a year, chronos would assign a month and day; if we assigned only a year and month, chronos would assign a day. (The outer set of curly brackets is standard and cannot be omitted for full date specifications, regardless of era.)

We've now added examples of each of the three basic types **chronos** supports connecting to our **timeline**. However, the package also offers some complementary elements. These are not connected to the **timeline**, though **theories** are designed to be connected to the types which are.

```
\chronostheory {%
  name=TeX,
  text content=\TeX,
  at=donald knuth-text.north west,
  xshift=-10pt,
  anchor=south east,
  connectors={east},
}
```

We also want to indicate Knuth's connection with  $T_EX$ , so we join the connector we made when creating the text tag for Knuth to the connector we've just created for  $T_EX$ . Chronos supports the addition of such connectors on most text tags created with its commands and the drawing of connections between connectors.

\draw [chronos connect=life:donald knuth] (connector donald knuth) -- ++(-5pt,0pt) |- (connector TeX);

This makes it possible to connect multiple people to the same theory, for example, as well as connecting a single person to multiple theories. In a more complete chronology, several different font designers or book publishers, for example, might be connected with a particular approach to typography. Elements which support connectors out-of-the-box are those belonging to tags of types life, event, period and theory.

When cronoleg is used, connectors are small circular nodes on the timeline's border and the borders of text tags i.e. the nodes containing information about the chronos elements presented in the chronology illustrated.

In contrast, theory circles, info (information boxes), copyleft or copyright notices and main titles are freestanding objects without ready-made connectors.

Headings and subheadings are designed to label stretches of time and are placed in relation to the timeline, though no connecting lines are drawn.

When we've finished adding material to the timeline, of course, we need to complete it.

 $\end{chronos}$ 

#### 4 Loading the Package

Chronos requires a  $IAT_FX 2_{\mathcal{E}}$  format no older than 2021–11–15. To load the package simply add the following to your document's preamble.

\usepackage{chronos}

Chronos will load the following packages and libraries automatically:

Packages:

- calc
- chronos-lib-colschemes (part of chronos) •
- chronos-lib-styles (part of chronos)
- etoolbox
- expl3 (if required)
- fp •
- pgfcalendar
- svn-prov
- tikz
- xcolor
- xparse (for IAT<sub>F</sub>X  $2_{\varepsilon}$  formats prior to 2020–10–01)

PGF/TikZ libraries:

- arrows.meta
- backgrounds
- calc
- decorations.text
- fit •
- fixedpointarithmetic
- positioning
- shadows

simple colour names = true|false

no simple colour names simple color names

The only two options currently supported are simple colour names or simple color names no simple color names and its complement no simple colour names or no simple color names. The following are boolean key equivalent:

> \usepackage{chronos} \usepackage[simple colour names]{chronos} \usepackage[simple colour names=true]{chronos} \usepackage[no simple colour names=false]{chronos}

In these cases, chronos will create an additional colour for each additional element of tag-type life, event, period, theory or info named  $\langle name \rangle$ , where  $\langle name \rangle$  is the value given to name when creating the element.

Since chronos creates these colours globally, this is potentially problematic. To disable it use any of the following

```
\usepackage[no simple colour names]{chronos}
\usepackage[no simple colour names=true]{chronos}
\usepackage[simple colour names=false]{chronos}
```

If you want to disable such names later, perhaps for specific timelines, see section 8.8.

# 5 Invocation

**chronos** [ $\langle chronos preamble \rangle$ ] environment

The  $\langle chronos \ preamble \rangle$  is a  $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$  setting any non-default options which should be applied to the timeline and any other macro-level elements of the picture to be constructed. At a minimum, most users will want to specify start and end dates, but the majority will likely want to customise the timeline further. (If you do not much care about customisation, there are simpler packages to typeset timelines!)

Some options can be given only in or before the  $\langle timeline \ specification \rangle$  in the optional  $\langle chronos \ preamble \rangle$ . Others will have no effect or unwanted effects at this point and must be specified later.

The environment chronos is a wrapper for a tikzpicture. It can neither include, nor be included in, another tikzpicture. Additional drawing commands must, therefore, be included in chronos itself.

# 6 Chronos Anatomy

Figure 2 provides an overview of the configuration and anatomy of a chronos timeline.

As explained in section 5, the timeline itself is constructed by the chronos environment, as determined by the  $\langle chronos \ preamble \rangle$ , any prior use of  $\langle chronosset$  and fallback defaults.

In addition to configuring the timeline itself, the  $\langle chronos \ preamble \rangle$  and any prior use of  $\backslash chronosset$  determine the use and configuration of any frame, headings and subheadings, as well as the default configuration of any additional elements.

The body of the chronos environment is the  $\langle timeline additions specification \rangle$ . The  $\langle timeline additions specification \rangle$  specifies what should be added to the tikzpicture besides the timeline itself and any frame, headings or subheadings. It will typically consist of a series of chronos commands specifying the items to be connected to the timeline and any non-connected elements (section 9). However, it may include any code valid in a tikzpicture environment or be entirely empty.

Section 6.1 provides a breakdown of the various elements of which the timeline is composed. Section 6.2 provides an overview of the additional elements which may be added in the  $\langle timeline additions specification \rangle$ .

If your timeline uses non-chronos commands, you will need to read sections 6.4 and 10, which explains the layers chronos uses. If your commands are not having their usual effects, you should first check whether they are simply hidden by another layer.

# 6.1 Chronos Timeline

The timeline itself is a horizontal line consisting of some or all of the following elements

- Timeline line refers to the main line, which is drawn or filled by default depending on height and configuration. The height, width and timeline border height are responsible for the total size of the timeline.
- Borders are (potentially) filled with a gradient above and below the main line. By default, borders are added when marks are placed on the timeline itself, which necessitates a taller timeline.
- Era labels are (potentially) placed at each end of the line, depending on the time period covered.
- Timeline years, minor years, marks, minor marks and bare marks may be placed above, below or on the main timeline line.

Some elements must be specified in the  $\langle chronos \ preamble \rangle$ , but are constructed only at the end of the chronos environment. These include optional headings and subheadings to be placed at the top of the chronos environment and an optional frame.

Headings and subheadings are constructed after and above most other elements on chronos foreground layer. As explained in section 8.7, headings and subheadings may be used to roughly indicate named stretches of time such as 'Tudors' or 'Bronze Age'.

- Headings are placed in a single row at the top.
- Subheadings are placed just below the headings in two rows:
  - The  $\mathsf{upper}\xspace$  subheadings are placed in a single row just beneath the headings.
  - The lower subheadings are placed in a single row just beneath the upper subheadings.

The frame is constructed even later, but drawn behind most other elements on chronos background layer.

# 6.2 Chronos Additional Element Types

Aside from the timeline itself, its headings and subheadings and frame, chronos provides six primary types of element which may be added to the timeline: life, event, period, theory, info and theory circle. In this documentation, these are referred to as 'tags' or 'tag types'. Three further tags encompass one-off elements:

headings drop + top border

Ψ.
Ε
, ,
÷

ubheadings drop	i i i i	addings <sup>1</sup> border	Another Heading	m. Upper Level	$\begin{array}{c} \textbf{Heading}\\ \textbf{Heading}\\ \textbf{Another Subheading}\\ \textbf{12}^{h}c \mathcal{A}^{h}c \mathcal{A}^{h}c .\\ \end{array}$	beadings
					main title	
	<u>e</u>	level 8				
	<u>e</u>	level 7		Chronos 7	imeline Anal	Joiny
	<u>e</u>	level 6				
	<u>e</u>	level 5				
	<u>e</u>	level 4		a period		
	<u>e</u>	level 3		189–191 CE A Perion	An Information Bow	
	<u>e</u>	level 2 time	timeline	an event		
		level 1	timeline border	756 CE An Event		2pt
	•	CE 500	0 300 200 100 100	1     <b>   </b>     00 300 400 500 600 700 8	1 1 1 1 1 1 9001000100 200 300 4001500	E
		_				
left border		-1-	timeline border		THE OUTSIDER 1002–1051 CE	- t
	<u>e</u>	level -2		theory circle	THE STRANGER 999-1011 CE	
	<u>e</u>	level -3		UPPER LABEL 6 × life	THE OTHER 912-987 CE	
	<u>e</u>	level -4			AN OTHER 882-920 CE	
	<u>e</u>	level -5		Lower Label	Some ONE Some Sector 2 (842–910 CE)	$2 \times \text{theory}$
	<u> </u>	level -6				A Theory Text Tag
	<u>e</u>	level -7			Type 'Life'	Theory Text Tag
bottom border-	<b>4</b>					



main covers the main title and frame, while copyleft and copyright account for any declaration of copyleft or copyright.

For example, all elements created using **\chronoslife** are said to belong to tag type life.

# 6.2.1 Primary Types

**6.2.1.1 Timeline-Connectable Elements** Elements belonging to the first three tags (life, event , period) are (potentially) connected to the timeline and are placed according to date of occurrence.

- These elements are assigned colours and colour names are created so they may easily be reused. These colours may (and, by default, are) used to create connections, connectors, lines and text tags.
- These elements are connected to the timeline by default using connections which join chronos connectors to text tag connectors on the elements' text tags.
- Dates/periods are (potentially) drawn or filled on, above or below the timeline using lines.
- Text tags are created for the elements<sup>11</sup>. By default, these typically include a name and date or date-range, though arbitrary content is permissible. The location of text tags is configurable, though it usually makes sense to place them in relation to their chronos connectors.
- Life and period use two dates for placement. A line is (potentially) drawn and/or filled on, above or below the timeline, by default in the element's associated colour.
- Event uses a single date for placement. A line is (potentially) drawn on the timeline, by default in the element's associated colour.

Timeline-connectable elements are also connectable (note 6.2.1.2).

**6.2.1.2** Connectable Elements Elements belonging to the first four tags (life, event, period , theory) are (potentially) connectable to each other.

- These elements (potentially) feature connectors which may be used to connect elements together. When the first three are connected to the timeline, one such connector is created by default<sup>12</sup>.
- Elements belonging to the theory tag are connectable, but not timeline-connectable. Unlike timeline-connectable elements (note 6.2.1.1), they cannot be connected to the timeline and may be freely placed; unlike non-connectable elements (note 6.2.1.3), they may be connected to each other and/or timeline-connectable elements.

## 6.2.1.3 Non-Connectable Elements

Elements belonging to the remaining tags (info, theory circle, main, copyleft and copyright) are non-connectable and, with the exception of frame may be located according to user preference.

- Like connectable-but-not-timeline-connectable elements, non-connectable elements are not connected to the timeline and may involve no date information at all, but unlike theories they do not feature connectors so may not easily be connected to other elements.
- Info and theory circle elements are standalone items for providing content. The former (potentially) have captions below; the latter (potentially) have labels above and/or below. The first are basically just text nodes with arbitrary content; the second can display two small chunks of text arranged in semicircles with a hole in the middle for a letter or symbol.
- Theory circles are *slow* and their use should be limited to avoid excessive compilation times. They are also arguably the most difficult to read and should be used only for items of minor or secondary importance.

 $<sup>^{11}</sup>I$  am grateful to Symbol 1 for enabling connectors to be centred correctly on the borders of text tags at TEX StackExchange: 385953.

 $<sup>^{12}\</sup>mathrm{Connectors}$  may be customised to 'disappear', but even invisible connectors can be used in connections.

• The standalone elements are best created last and are most useful for filling in 'holes' in a timeline which would otherwise look unbalanced. If chiropody didn't develop much in the twelfth century or not much is known about the finer points of tortoise-raising in the second, these elements may be used to plug the unsightly gaps left by inconvenient histories.

### 6.2.2 Secondary (Sub-)Elements

Orthogonal to the primary elements explained above, chronos uses the following (sub-)elements:

- Connectors are small elements drawn on the boundaries of text tags and the timeline which can be used as connection points. By default, they are small and circular, but they may be rendered invisibly or otherwise according to preference.
- Connections are drawn between connectors. The package draws a connection between the timeline and date-placed elements by default, but occasionally you may prefer to specify this connection manually. Other connections can be added to link elements.
- Text tags hold information associated with all elements except theory circles.
- Lines are marked on the timeline to indicate the date and/or duration of dated elements.

# 6.3 Chronos Coordinate and Node Names

Figure 3 shows key coordinate and node names. Those available by default can be shown on any timeline using the option debug. Examples of different tags have been added with labels to illustrate how chronos names their coordinates and nodes. Detailed documentation is provided in sections 8 and 9.

# 6.4 Chronos Layers

In addition to loading the backgrounds library, which defines the layer background, and the default layer main, chronos defines another four layers, for a total of six: chronos background and chronos middle ground, which are layered between background and main, and chronos foreground and chronos overlay, which are layered above main. From top to bottom:

```
chronos overlay
chronos foreground
main
chronos middle ground
chronos background
background
```

Section 10 explains how to draw directly on different layers. You may wish to do this if you are using non-chronos code in the  $\langle timeline \ additions \ specification \rangle$  or the facilities explained in section 12 for deferring code.



Figure 3: chronos anatomy: key coordinate and node names

# 7 Chronos Schemes and Styles

Two simple methods for applying, defining and reusing chronos styles are provided: chronos styles and colour schemes. If using both, load the chronos style first, since it may already load a colour schemes.

# 7.1 Chronos Styles

By far the easiest way to customise a timeline is simply to load a chronos style in the  $\langle chronos preamble \rangle$ . This section illustrates a basic timeline typeset with each of chronos's standard styles.

Note that you will typically need to set start date and end date and perhaps adjust how often years and marks appear on your timeline. Chronos styles such as key[chronosstyle]event splitter set highly idiosyncratic dates by default, simply by way of example. chronos will not warn you if you don't override options set by a chronos style.

In selecting a chronos style, bear in mind that some things are easy to change, while others are harder. At a minimum, you should pick an 'on line' chronos style if you want timeline years on line and an 'off line' one if you want them above or below. event years on line requires an 'on line' chronos style; event dates split is designed for an 'off line' one.

You should also think about how much information you need to display. date centric won't work for a densely packed timeline, so if you have a lot of things to pack in, don't choose this unless you're drawing an extremely long timeline. Likewise, cronoleg will look rather silly if you only want to represent the lives of Socrates and Plato.

### 7.1.1 'On Line' Styles

All 'on line' styles are designed to support adding elements both above and below the timeline. This includes the default settings. See table 1 and fig. 4.

- cronoleg The most developed and best tested, if somewhat idiosyncratic, chronos style, based on the chronos style code used to construct my Western Philosophy Timeline. It constructs a 235mm timeline and uses a colour scheme highlighting elements of type life, but the colours may be adjusted or the same colour scheme applied to event and period as well. By default, it is designed to produce a picture occupying an entire A4 page and has a wide right-hand margin for additional elements, in addition to ten levels above and below the timeline. See table 1 and fig. 5. By default, this chronos style does not use the bounding box for the frame.
- date centric A chronos style with a monochrome appearance and sans-serif fonts of 150mm<sup>13</sup>. Intended for *chronos style* timelines highlighting relatively few dates. See table 1 and fig. 6. This style demonstrates the use of event years on line and special date.
- lavender menace A variant of modern with a muted colour scheme and sans-serif fonts. By default, it produces a timeline covering the modern era (1500–1900 CE). See table 1 and fig. 7a. A chronos style with a monochrome appearance and sans-serif fonts. By default, it produces a timeline covering the modern era (1500–1900 CE). See table 1 and fig. 7b.
  - rainbow serif A colourful variant of serif on line utilising xcolor colour series and serif fonts. See table 1 *chronos style* and fig. 8a.
  - serif on line A chronos style with a monochrome appearance and serif fonts. See table 1 and fig. 8b.
    - chronos style sober judge A somewhat subdued chronos style with a monochrome appearance, sans-serif fonts and boxed chronos style text tags. See table 1 and fig. 9.

 $<sup>^{13}\</sup>textsc{Based}$  on my answer at TeX StackExchange: 324448.

				Defaults		
Name	Timeline Year Style	Levels	Dates	Colour Scheme	Rotation	Arrow
_	on line	0:0	1800-2050 ce	default	$\checkmark$	_
cronoleg	on line	10:10	500  BCE-	cronoleg	$\checkmark$	_
			$2050  \mathrm{CE}$			
date centric	[on line]	-	1935 - 2010  Ce	default	—	_
lavender menace	on line	3:3	1500 - 1900  Ce	lavender+chronosSilver	$\checkmark$	_
modern	on line	3:3	1500 - 1900  Ce	modern	_	_
rainbow serif	on line	3:3	1500-2100  ce	xcolseries	$\checkmark$	_
serif on line	on line	3:3	1800 - 1900  Ce	default	_	_
sober judge	on line	3:3	1/10/1001 -	default	—	_
			14/6/1003 CE			
blues below	off line,	0:3	1550-2050 CE	blues	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$
	below					
flipping blues	off line,	3:0	1550 - 2050 ce	blues	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$
	above					
contemporary 90	off line,	0:3	2002-2016 CE	contninety	_	$\checkmark$
	above					
off line colour	off line,	-	3000 -	offlinebasic	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$
	below		2000  BCE			
off line colour alt	off line,	-	3000 -	offlinealt	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$
	below		2000  BCE			
off line simple	off line,	-	3000 -	offlinebasic	_	$\checkmark$
	below		2000  BCE			
rotated 45	off line,	-	$25\mathrm{BCE}{-}20\mathrm{CE}$	default	_	_
	above					
simple arrow	off line,	-	$1\!-\!2000 ce$	default	_	$\checkmark$
	above					
somewhat plain	off line,	0:3	500  BCE-	default	—	_
	above		$2050  \mathrm{CE}$			
event splitter	[above]	-	01/13-	default	_	_
-			$02/22/2014{ m ce}$			
lines on line	none	-	1-2016 CE	default	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$
plain arrow	none	-	12016 CE	default	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$

Table 1: Summary of chronos styles.



Figure 4: Chronos style: none.

#### 7.1.2 'Off Line' Styles

- blues below A chronos style featuring the blues colour scheme, off-set lines and year labels rotated through 45°. *chronos style* Intended for timelines which add elements below. See table 1 and fig. 10a. This style demonstrates how to rotate year labels.
- contemporary 90 A chronos style with a monochrome appearance, sans-serif fonts and rotated year labels, which chronos style produces a relatively short timeline of 90mm by default. Intended for timelines which add elements below. See table 1 and fig. 11.
- flipping blues A variation of blues below featuring year labels rotated through -45°. Intended for timelines *chronos style* which add elements above. See table 1 and fig. 10b. This style demonstrates how to utilise an existing chronos style to produce a variant.
- off line colour =  $\langle length \rangle$ chronos style

A straightforward style utilising scientific dates in which the line tapers to form an arrow. Intended for timelines which add elements above and/or below. The optional  $\langle length \rangle$  specifies the length of the tapering.

 $Default: \ \texttt{20mm}$ 

See table 1 and fig. 12a. This style demonstrates the use of chronos middle ground layer to reduce visual clutter where connections cross timeline marks. Although the connections are drawn after the timeline, they are placed on a lower layer, with a partially transparent rectangle in between.

off line colour alt =  $\langle length \rangle$ chronos style

A variant of off line colour which uses a different colour scheme.

Default: 20mm

 $-19 \, of \, 125 -$ 





chronos style Intended for timelines with connected elements solely of tag type event. See table 1 and fig. 16.

drawn on the timeline itself<sup>17</sup>. Date information is confined to text tags. Out-of-the-box, this chronos style adds elements of tag type event above and those of type life and period below.

Default: 5mm

See table 1 and fig. 17.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>14</sup>In fact, this version is closest to the original. See my answer at TFX StackExchange: 324106.

 $<sup>^{15}\</sup>mathrm{Based}$  on my answer at TeX StackExchange: 342699.

 $<sup>^{16}\</sup>textsc{Based}$  on my answer at TeX StackExchange: 325890.

 $<sup>^{17}\</sup>mathrm{Based}$  on my answer at TeX StackExchange: 324453.



### (a) Chronos style: lavender menace



(b) Chronos style: modern

Figure 7: Figure 7a is a variant of fig. 7b.









Figure 8: Figure 8a is a variant of fig. 8b.



Figure 9: Chronos style: sober judge.

### plain arrow = $\langle dimension \rangle$

chronos style

A variant of lines on line (fig. 17) which draws a 120mm timeline arrow with no year labels and life, event and period lines drawn on the timeline itself<sup>18</sup>. Date information is confined to text tags.

Default: 5mm

Intended for timelines which add elements of tag type event above and those of type life and period below. See table 1 and fig. 17b.

# 7.2 Chronos Colour Schemes

As explained in section 8.8, chronos utilises a somewhat complex system for colour customisation. In many cases, however, you will not need to delve into the mechanisms used. Instead, you can simply load an existing colour scheme. If none of the provided schemes meet your needs, see section 13.1.

To load a colour schemes, you just write

```
\begin{chronos}
  [
   modern,
   colour scheme=blues,
  ]
 \end{chronos}
```

which would load the chronos style **modern** followed by the colour schemes **blues**. Since chronos styles may legitimately load colour schemes, but colour schemes may not load chronos styles, always load any chronos style *before* any colour scheme. Then make any further modifications you wish.

```
\begin{chronos}
[
```

 $<sup>^{18}\</sup>textsc{Based}$  on my answer at TeX StackExchange: 324453.



(a) Chronos style: blues below.



(b) Chronos style: flipping blues.

Figure 10: Figure 10b is a variant of fig. 10a.



Figure 11: Chronos style: contemporary 90.

- 25 of 125 -











Continued Figure 12: Figures 12a and 12c are variants of fig. 12b.



Figure 13: Chronos style: rotated 45.

		Heading						
τ	Upper Subheading Lower S	) ubheading						
1	250	500	750	1000	1250	1500	1750	2000
Simple Arrow		476Period				11/10/1492 CE Event		⊤ Life 1969–2010 CE

Figure 14: Chronos style: simple arrow.



Figure 15: Chronos style: somewhat plain.

Event Splitter							
Jan 13 2014	Jan 20 2014	Jan 27 2014	Feb 03 2014	Feb 10 2014	Feb 17 2014	Feb 22 2014	
Event 1	Event 2	Event 3	Event 4	Event 5	Event 6 & Interventior	The End	

Figure 16: Chronos style: event splitter.



Figure 17: Figure 17b is a variant of fig. 17a.

-28 of 125 -

Colour scheme	Variant Of	Default For	Examples
- (default)	-	rotated 45, serif on line and somewhat plain	figs. 4, 8b, 13 and 15
blues	-	blues below and flipping blues	figs. $1, 10a$ and $10b$
contninety	-	contemporary 90	fig. 11
cronoleg	-	cronoleg	fig. 5
lavender	-	lavender menace	fig. 7a
modern	-	modern	fig. 7b
offlinebasic	-	off line colour and off line simple	figs. $12a$ and $12c$
offlinealt	cronoleg	off line colour alt	fig. 12b
sobriety	-	sober judge	fig. 9
xcolseries	-	rainbow serif	fig. 8a

Table 2: Chronos Colour schemes.

```
modern,
colour scheme=blues,
timeline={%
    dates=1066:1946,
    },
    event/default colour=ForestGreen,
    every text tags+={draw=##1},
    ]
\end{chronos}
```

colour scheme =  $\{\langle name \rangle\}$ 

color scheme key

 $\langle name \rangle$  should be the name of a colour scheme. A small number of colour schemes are provided by chronos (section 7.2); others may be defined using the method explained in section 13.1.

Default: the default set of colours.

Example: colour scheme=cronoleg

chronos styles may load colour schemes and typically should if they wish to make significant changes.

In addition to the default colours, chronos currently provides blues, contninety, cronoleg, lavender, modern, offlinebasic, offlinealt, sobriety and xcolseries (table 2). New colour schemes may be created using the interface explained in section 13.1.

# 8 Configuration

Chronos was designed to be highly configurable. However, by far the *easiest* way to customise a timeline is to load a chronos style. See section 7.1.

Most configuration uses the standard key/value interface provided by TikZ. In addition, a **\chronosset** is provided for configuring defaults.

Most chronos options have local scope. That is, changes do not survive the current group.

However, a small number of options are set *globally*. In these cases, **chronos** keeps track of a list of defaults, as well as the current options, and restores the defaults at the beginning and end of each **chronos** environment. By default, **\chronosset** changes the default values of globalised options, whereas the  $\langle chronos \ preamble \rangle$  does not.

Globalised options saved as default are stored in expl3 variables named with a package-specific prefix. A similar prefix is used for globalised colours.

 $$ \chronosset { key-value list } macro $ \chronosset { key-value list } $ \chroosset { key-value list } $ \chronosset { key-value$ 

### $\ \ list \$

macro

This should be used to configure **chronos** *outside* the **chronos** environment. It should *not* be used within that environment. The starred version does *not* make any global changes. In general, there is no reason to use the starred version as altering these variables non-globally will have no effect and other variables are not set globally in any case. It is provided 'just in case', even though I can't think of a use-case for it.

Chronos sets the following options globally. At the end of the preamble, the active values are saved. These are then restored at the end of each chronos environment. This means the results of typesetting a timeline should not depend on earlier timelines in the same document, a phenomenon which may otherwise result in changes of position and colour, for example. Options set globally:

- the list of century subheadings (but neither other subheadings nor headings are globalised);
- most colours and lists of colours;
- whether the last text tag of a particular kind (event or period) was placed above or below the timeline.

All other settings should behave as usual for PGF/TikZ as they are not handled specially and all other  $IAT_{EX} 3$  variables are declared locally.

This approach is intended to ensure that things behave as I expect you to expect, but it is obviously not unlikely you may expect something I don't expect you to expect. For this reason, it is strongly recommended that document-wide settings be configured in the preamble of your document. \chronosset should be used in the document body *only* when you wish to change the document defaults partway through your document. If at all possible, I recommend the use of styles, configured in the preamble, instead, but there will be cases where such an approach may be sub-optimal. \chronosset may be used later in such cases.

In particular, you are urged to configure default colours and colour lists, in your preamble. See sections 8.3, 8.8 and 9.5. If you get unexpected colours, please remember that chronos defines most colours *globally*. They are *not* limited to the current chronos environment. That is, chronos lets you customise the colours in many different ways, including many you might wish it did not.

#### 8.1 Documentation Notes

The following notes apply throughout this document.

#### 8.1.1 Font Conventions

This document uses the following typographic conventions.

- $Bold/Bold \ Italics$  are used to emphasise important points, especially ones which might be overlooked.
- Italics are used with  $\langle \text{ and } \rangle$  for { $\langle \text{mandatory arguments} \rangle$ }, [ $\langle \text{optional arguments} \rangle$ ] and  $\langle \text{parameterised values} \rangle$ . When used in the text without delimiters, they are used for emphasis in accordance with standard typographic conventions for English language texts.
- Monowidth Typewriter is used for \macros (e.g. \commands), environments. key names and code.

Sans Serif is used for concepts, elements, package names and class names.

The distinction between a 'concept', an 'element' and a 'key' is not always obvious. Where discussion meanders through the borderlands of fuzzy concepts<sup>19</sup>, the font in which a word appears

 $<sup>^{19}</sup>$ A 'fuzzy concept' is one whose extension cannot be precisely defined without arbitrariness. For example, there are clear cases where 'bald' applies and equally clear cases where it does not, but there is no non-arbitrary point at which non-baldness becomes baldness. 'Bald' is clear in the middle and clear well beyond its scope, but decidedly fuzzy at its edges.

is sometimes arbitrary and the choice should not be taken too seriously. Moreover, some words, such as 'timeline', are used for all three.

#### 8.1.2 Keys and Values

Chronos provides a user interface for customisation based almost exclusively on pgfkeys.

**8.1.2.1 Keys** In case you have somehow come across this package shortly after landing in contemporary  $T_EX$  land, the basic idea is that the package provides a set of keys which you use selectively to customise the output. Some of these keys are simple keywords.

Example: no connections,

**8.1.2.2** Values When keys permit or require arguments, the arguments are called values. A given key will generally require a  $\langle value \rangle$  of some particular sort, as explained for each key below.

Some chronos keys permit an argument, but don't require it.

Example: frame,

Example: frame=true,

Example: frame=false,

The above are all valid (with the first two being equivalent).

Other chronos keys require one or more arguments.

Example: colour=Cerulean,

Example: heading={chronos year -150}{chronos year 250}{past},

Chronos frequently requires multiple arguments to be separated by colons, because this often seemed less error-prone than multiplying curly brackets in complex cases.

Example: dates={{-100}-01-12}:{900-12-24},

In some instances, where a proliferation of colons seemed no less an invitation to error than one of curly brackets, the colon cases are convenience keys, which you can avoid through the use of two or more alternate keys to specify items separately.

**8.1.2.3 Key-Value Lists**  $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$ s are comma-separated lists of items, each of which is either a simple  $\langle key-name \rangle$  or a  $\langle key-name \rangle = \{ \langle comma-separated \ list \ of \ values \rangle \}$ . In general, the  $\langle comma-separated \ list \ of \ values \rangle$  will be a TikZ  $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$ , though it may sometimes be appropriate to include further chronos keys.

Example: event/line={draw=blue,draw opacity=.75}

#### 8.1.3 Key Specifications

Key specifications in this document look like this:

key name = (argument specification)
key type

\Description of key and explanation of usage. \Default: \langle key's default value \Default: \langle key's initial value \Default.

Example:  $\langle example \text{ of } usage \rangle$ 

 $\langle Commentary. \rangle$ 

- 31 of 125 -

tag1, tag2, tag3, ...

Key type	Description	Example
boolean key	Controls a boolean or toggle i.e. a conditional.	
choice key	Selects from a list of possible options.	
comma-separated list key	Processes or stores a comma-separated list of things.	
colour key	Specifies a colour.	
colour list key	Special kind of comma-separated list key which stores a list of colours.	
date key	Specifies a date or dates.	
date format key	Specifies one or more date output formats.	
dimension key	Specifies a T <sub>F</sub> X dimension.	
key	Some other kind of key.	
style	A $PGF/TikZ$ style.	

Table 3: chronos key types.

Here, key name is the name of the key, key type is the type of key, (argument specification) specifies the number, kind and format of the value or values the key expects and tag1, tag2, tag3, ... indicates to elements of which tag or tags the key applies. See table 3 for an explanation of the types of key chronos uses. See sections 6 and 6.2 for information about tags.

If no initial value is specified, the default value is also the initial value. Where both an initial and a default value are specified, the default is the value used if the  $\langle key name \rangle$  is given without an argument and the initial value is the value used if  $\langle key name \rangle$  is not used at all. This terminology follows the usage in **pgfkeys** and is especially prevalent in the handling of boolean keys, where it is common for the initial value to be **false**, but the default value to be **true**.

Schematically,

```
\begin{chronos}% ^^A initial value used
  Ε
   %
      ^^A other keys
 ]
\end{chronos}
\begin{chronos}%^^A default value used
  Γ
   %^^A other keys
   key name,
 ]
\end{chronos}
\begin{chronos}%^^A new value used
 Г
   %^^A other keys
   key name=new value,
 ]
\end{chronos}
```

#### 8.1.4 Syntax Notes

See section 8.1.5 for the syntax of dimension keys, where plus and prime have different meanings.

**8.1.4.1** Slash (/) Where a forward slash (/) occurs in a key, it indicates a context-specific key. For those familiar with PGF keys, this corresponds to a path under /chronos.

Example: life/connection

indicates a key affecting connection(s) belonging to elements of type life.

**8.1.4.2** Plus (+) A plus sign (+) at the end of a key indicates that the key *adds* to any pre-existing list. This form is generally available when the base key replaces, rather than adding

- 32 of 125 -

to, any pre-existing list.

```
timeline line={draw=black,fill=green},
timeline line+={opacity=.8},
```

is equivalent to

```
timeline line={draw=black,fill=green,opacity=.8},
```

A plus at the end of a dimension key indicates that the dimension key *adds* the value given to the current value of the dimension.

**8.1.4.3 Prime (')** A prime (') at the end of a key indicates that the key *replaces* any pre-existing list. This form is generally available when the base key adds to, rather than replacing, any pre-existing list.

```
century subheadings={15,17,19}{th},
century subheadings'={13,14}{th},
century subheading={21}{st},
```

is equivalent to

```
century subheadings'={13,14}{th},
century subheading={21}{st},
```

and will result in subheadings being created for the  $13^{\text{th}}$ ,  $14^{\text{th}}$  and  $21^{\text{st}}$  centuries (assuming the timeline covers these time periods and the relevant coordinates exist).

A prime at the end of a dimension key, or at the end except for a plus (+), indicates that the dimension key expects a T<sub>F</sub>X dimension, as opposed to an expression to be evaluated by pgfmath.

#### 8.1.5 Dimension Notes

8.1.5.1 **Dimensions** Each key described as a dimension keys is available in six forms<sup>20</sup>:

mension $key$	=	{ <pre>(pgfma)</pre>	th-pars	sable o	limens	$ $ sion $\rangle$ ]
dimension key						

The dimension key parses the  $\langle specified \ value \rangle$  using pgfmath and assigns the result in points as the dimension. This base form, which is typically the only form explicitly listed in this documentation, is slow but flexible. Unless otherwise noted, the existence of the base form implies the availability of all six variants.

 $\langle \text{dimension key} \rangle' = \{\langle \text{dimension} \rangle\}$ dimension key

*(dir* 

The dimension key expects a  $T_EX \langle dimension \rangle$ , complete with units, which it assigns directly. This is faster but less flexible.

 $\langle dimension \ key \rangle$ + = { $\langle pgfmath-parsable \ dimension \rangle$ }

dimension key The dimension key parses the expression ( $\langle specified \ value \rangle + \langle existing \ value \rangle$ ) with pgfmath and assigns the result in points. This is slower but more flexible.

 $\langle dimension \ key \rangle' + = \{\langle dimension \rangle\}$ dimension key \_\_\_\_\_

The dimension key expects a  $T_EX \langle dimension \rangle$ , complete with units, which it adds to the  $\langle existing dimension value \rangle$  directly. This is faster but less flexible.

 $\langle dimension \ key \rangle$  = { $\langle pgfmath-parsable \ dimension \rangle$ }

 $<sup>^{20}</sup>$ Occasionally, a convenience key may only support the prime, prime-plus and prime-minus forms. Where this applies, the limitation is noted in the description.

The dimension key parses the expression ( $\langle specified \ value \rangle - \langle existing \ value \rangle$ ) with pgfmath and assigns the result in points. This is slower but more flexible.

 $\langle \text{dimension key} \rangle$ ' - = { $\langle \text{dimension} \rangle$ } dimension key

The dimension key expects a  $T_EX \langle dimension \rangle$ , complete with units, which it subtracts from the  $\langle existing \ dimension \ value \rangle$  directly. This is faster but less flexible.

When dimension keys end in prime, prime-plus or prime-minus,  $\langle dimension \rangle$ s must be given as T<sub>E</sub>X dimensions complete with units and may not require calculation.

Example: timeline height '=10mm

Example: timeline border height'+=20pt

Example: timeline width'-=2em

When dimension keys do not include prime, any value which can be parsed by pgfmath is valid.

Example: timeline height=.01\textheight

Example: timeline border height+=1.5\headrulewidth

Example: timeline width-=0.05\linewidth+1.5pt

#### 8.1.6 Date Specification Notes

**8.1.6.1** Date Format Specifications A (date format specification) ((date format spec.)) is an expression using the syntax explained in section 8.2.2.

Example: date format={!d !B !Y !E}

8.1.6.2 Dates  $\langle date \rangle$ s must be specified using the syntax explained in section 8.2.1. Example: dates={{-200}-04-05}:{200-12-31}

#### 8.1.7 Colour Notes

**8.1.7.1** Colours  $\langle colour \rangle$  should be colour names or mixtures supported by xcolor.

Example: colour=WildStrawberry

Example: foreground=WildStrawberry!50!black

**8.1.7.2** Colour Lists (*colour list*)'s are comma-separated lists of colour names or mixtures supported by xcolor.

Example: life/colours above={blue,green,blue!50!green}

8.1.7.3 Colour colour and color are synonyms in key names.

Example: colours below={black,gray}

Example: colors below={black,gray}

### 8.2 Dates

Chronos uses a fixed format for date input and offers a flexible format for date output.

### 8.2.1 Input

All date keys expect one or two arguments specifying a date or dates in the format  $\{Y\}-M-D\}$ . Y, M and D must be integers. If Y is negative, the date is interpreted as BCE; otherwise CE is assumed. The additional curly brackets around Y are *mandatory* for negative values.

code	meaning	example output	date format specifier?	year format specifier?
!a	short weekday name	Mon	$\checkmark$	_
! A	full weekday name	Monday	$\checkmark$	_
!b	short month name	Jan	$\checkmark$	_
!B	full month name	January	$\checkmark$	_
!c	semi-shortened year	900	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$
!d	day of the month	23	$\checkmark$	_
!E	era	BCE or CE label	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$
! m	month number	01	$\checkmark$	_
!q	minus if year is BCE	-	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$
! Q	minus if year is BCE; plus for CE	+	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$
! y	last two digits of year	66	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$
! Y	year	1066	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$

Table 4: Date and year format specification codes.

```
start date={{-3000}-05-23},
end date={1500-12-04},
```

It is also permissible to specify only a year, in which case chronos will specify values for the month and day. Hence,

dates={-245}:789,

is also valid. Where two dates are required, dates offers a more concise syntax, but dates may always be specified singly if this is preferred.

#### 8.2.2Output

All date format keys expect one or three arguments using the syntax specified in table 4.

Example: date format={ B d, Y}

This would result in a full month name followed by the day of the month, then a comma and finally the year.

Each character in the format is either translated into an element of the date format or passed through as is. This includes punctuation and spaces. (Note that macros etc. won't work here because the macro will be broken down and 'translated' token-by-token.)

The format codes, listed in table 4, are mostly a subset of the format codes provided by GNU's date command, with a few extras not relevant to  $GNU^{21}$ .

A subset of the date-specification codes (as indicated in table 4) is available to customise the formatting of years on the timeline itself. In the case of the timeline, era labels may instead be added at each end to avoid the clutter of including BCE or CE with every year.

	= { $\langle date format specification \rangle$ }	
date format key	When used in the $\langle chronos \ preamble \rangle$ or in $\ chronosset$ , sets the default format for dates.	
	Default: !d/!m/!Y\thinspace !E (with eras)	
	Default: !d/!m/!Y (without eras)	
		event
date format key	$^{-21}$ I am grateful to Joseph Wright for providing the code implementing this at T <sub>E</sub> X StackExchange: 32764	42.

- 35 of 125 -

	When used in the $\langle chronos\ preamble \rangle$ or in $\chronosset$ , sets the default format for event dates. This key overrides show eras, without eras, full dates and only years for elements of tag type event.
	Default: !d/!m/!Y\thinspace !E (with eras)
	Default: !d/!m/!Y (without eras)
	The following keys set event/date format conditionally. This may be used to switch between formats showing eras or only years and no eras or full dates while ensuring uniformity of all formats with or without eras, for example. For instance, it may make little sense to use full dates for events where only the year is known or which occurred when different calendars were used, but you might still want full dates for other cases. <i>These keys override</i> show eras, without eras, full dates and only years for elements of tag type event.
date format key	= { $\langle date \text{ format specification} \rangle$ } event
	When used in the $\langle chronos\ preamble \rangle$ or in $\chronosset$ , sets the default format to use for event when showing full dates with eras.
	Default: !d/!m/!Y\thinspace !E
event/show eras/only years date format key	= { $\langle date \text{ format specification} \rangle$ } event
	When used in the $\langle chronos\ preamble \rangle$ or in <b>\chronosset</b> , sets the default format to use for event when showing only years with eras.
	Default: !Y\thinspace !E
date format key	= { $\langle date \text{ format specification} \rangle$ } event
	When used in the $\langle chronos\ preamble \rangle$ or in $\chronosset$ , sets the default format to use for event when showing full dates without eras.
	Default: !d/!m/!Y
event/without eras/only	= { $\langle date \text{ format specification} \rangle$ } event
years date format key	When used in the $\langle chronos\ preamble \rangle$ or in $\chronosset$ , sets the default format to use for event when showing only years without eras.
	Default: !Y
	life and period are more complex as date ranges are involved, but the basic structure works in the same way.
life/date formats period/date formats date format key	$= \{ \langle date \ format \ spec. \rangle \} : \{ \langle date \ format \ spec. \rangle \} : \{ \langle date \ format \ spec. \rangle \}$
	When used in the $\langle chronos\ preamble \rangle$ or in $\langle chronosset$ , sets the default formats for life or period dates. In these cases, we have two dates — either a birth and death or a start and end. You might want different formats for the two and you might want different formats when the first date is BCE and the second CE. Hence, we need to specify three formats. The first argument specifies the format to use for the birth or start date when the death or end date occurs in the same era. The second specifies the format to use for the first date. These keys override show eras, without eras, full dates and only years for elements of tag types life and period respectively.
	eq:default: \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$
	Default: $\{!d/!m/!Y\}: \{!d/!m/!Y\}: \{!d/!m/!Y\}$ (without eras)
	The following keys override date formats for elements of tag types life and period respectively. They work in the same way as those explained above for event.
life/show eras/full period/show eras/full date format key	$= \{ \langle date \ format \ spec. \rangle \} : \{ \langle date \ format \ spec. \rangle \} : \{ \langle date \ format \ spec. \rangle \}$
	When used in the $\langle chronos\ preamble \rangle$ or in $\chronosset$ , sets the default formats to use for life or period when showing full dates with eras.
	- 36  of  125 -
	Default: {!d/!m/!Y}:{!d/!m/!Y\thinspace !E}:{!d/!m/!Y\thinspace !E}
--	--
	$= \{ \langle date \ format \ spec. \rangle \} : \{ \langle date \ format \ spec. \rangle \} : \{ \langle date \ format \ spec. \rangle \}$
period/show eras/only years date format key	When used in the $\langle chronos \ preamble \rangle$ or in $\ chronosset$ , sets the default formats to use for life or period when showing only years with eras.
	Default: {!Y}:{!Y\thinspace !E}:{!Y\thinspace !E}
	$= \{ \langle date \ format \ spec. \rangle \} : \{ \langle date \ format \ spec. \rangle \} : \{ \langle date \ format \ spec. \rangle \}$
period/without eras/full date format key	When used in the $\langle chronos \ preamble \rangle$ or in $\ chronosset$ , sets the default formats to use for life or period when showing full dates without eras.
	Default: {!d/!m/!Y}:{!d/!m/!Y}:{!d/!m/!Y}
life/without eras/only	$= \{ \langle date \ format \ spec. \rangle \} : \{ \langle date \ format \ spec. \rangle \} : \{ \langle date \ format \ spec. \rangle \}$
	When used in the $\langle chronos \ preamble \rangle$ or in $\ chronosset$ , sets the default formats to use for life or period when showing only years without eras.
date format key	Default: {!Y}:{!Y}:{!Y}
	= { $\langle date \text{ format specification} \rangle$ }
date format key	Sets <i>all</i> date formats for <i>all</i> tags and the default format to $\langle date \text{ format specification} \rangle$ . This key does not affect the formatting of years, minor years or eras on the timeline itself.
	Default: none
	Initially: none
bce year label	$= \langle text \rangle$
key	The label to use if showing the BCE era in text tags. Note this is not the label used if marking eras on the timeline, unless including them as part of year labels.
	Default: \textsc{bce}
	<pre>\begin{chronos}  [     bce year label=BCE,  ]</pre>

\end{chronos}

The label is available as **\bceyearlabel** inside the environment **chronos**. In addition, it is made available at the end of the preamble if the command is not otherwise defined.

ce year label =  $\langle text \rangle$ 

*key* The label to use if showing the CE era in **text tags**. Note this is not the label used if marking eras on the **timeline**, unless including them as part of year labels.

```
Default: \textsc{ce}
```

```
\begin{chronos}
  [
    ce year label=\textsc{ad},
  ]
  \end{chronos}
```

The label is available as **\ceyearlabel** inside the **chronos** environment. In addition, it is made available at the end of the preamble if the command is not otherwise defined.

The timeline itself features only years (but see event years on line for a limited exception).

```
year format = {\langle year \text{ format specification} \rangle} date format key
```

When used in the  $\langle chronos \ preamble \rangle$  or in  $\langle chronosset$ , sets the default format for years. This is the format used to format 'major' years on the timeline.

Default: **!Y\thinspace !E** (with eras)

Default: !Y (without eras)

date format key

minor year format = { $\langle vear format specification \rangle$ }

When used in the (chronos preamble) or in \chronosset, sets the default format for 'minor' years.

Default: !c

The idea is that you might want, say, four-digit years every half century and three-digit years every hundred years in between.

timeline/timeline mark eras = true|false

 $boolean \ key$ 

key

Should era labels be included at the end(s) of the timeline? Note that a label will only be shown if the dates the timeline covers include some in the relevant era. So if your timeline starts at 500CE, the BCE will be omitted and if it ends at 200 BCE, the CE will be omitted.

Default: true

Initially: false

timeline bce label =  $\langle text \rangle$ 

The label to use if marking the BCE era on the timeline. Note this is not the label used if showing eras in text tags.

Default: BCE

\begin{chronos} Ľ timeline bce label=BC, ٦  $\end{chronos}$ 

The label is available as \celabel inside the chronos environment. In addition, it is made available at the end of the document preamble for general use if the command is not otherwise defined.

```
timeline ce label = \langle text \rangle
                      key
```

The label to use if marking the CE era on the timeline. Note this is not the label used if showing eras in text tags.

Default: CE

```
\begin{chronos}
  Г
    timeline ce label=AD,
  1
\end{chronos}
```

The label is available as \bcelabel inside the chronos environment. In addition, it is made available for general use at the end of the document preamble if the command is not otherwise defined.

#### The Problem of the Non-Existent Year 8.2.3

Chronos uses pgfcalendar to calculate Julian day numbers from dates when constructing the timeline. Generally, this works well, but an issue occurs if your timeline spans the two eras (BCE



(b) chronos adjustment.

Figure 18: The problem of the non-existent year.

and CE). Pgfcalendar assumes there was a year zero (fig. 18a), which historians will assure you there was not.

By default, chronos corrects for this (fig. 18b), but the correction can be switched off if desired (fig. 18a).

```
timeline/year zero = true|false
boolean key
```

Whether to tolerate the year zero.

Default: true

Initially: false

If there is no year zero, certain complications arise. First, what should be marked on the timeline at the 'era switch'? Second, if you ask chronos to mark every hundredth year, say, you probably do not expect it to mark 200 BCE, 100 BCE, 1 CE, 101 CE and so on. Moreover, you might want to do something such as this

```
\label{eq:linear} $$ $ 100,-50,\ldots,300 \ [red,inner sep=2.5pt] at (chronos year \i) $$;
```

This seems reasonable, but will fail if chronos year 0 doesn't exist.

Chronos attempts to solve these problems by handling the 'era switch' as a special case. First, if there is no year zero, it will create *two* coordinates at the switch, provided you have asked it to mark something at this point. chronos year 0 will exist, as far as chronos is concerned, at the same point as chronos year 1. This means you can loop over the era switch in the normal way and expect sensible output, but you can *also* refer to chronos year 1, even if you only asked every hundredth year to be marked from 100 BCE.

Second, chronos provides a special option for configuring what is marked on the timeline at the switch of eras.

timeline/mark at era switch = true|false boolean key

Whether to use a mark rather than a year at the era switch. If false, the year (e.g. '1') is used; if true, a mark is used instead (illustrated in fig. 18b, though the format will depend on how the timeline is configured).

Default: true

Initially: false (if showing every year)

Initially: true (otherwise)

Note that this option only configures what is marked if something is. If you ask chronos to mark every hundredth year from 150 BCE to 400 CE, nothing will be marked at the era switch (but chronos will write a warning to the log). Chronos won't do that by default, but, if you insist, it will take you at your word.

#### timeline/year at era switch = true|false boolean key

Whether to use a year rather than a mark at the era switch. This is simply a convenience key which does the opposite of mark at era switch.

Default: true

Initially: see mark at era switch.

### 8.3 Basic Colours

Chronos uses (or may use) two basic colours: one for foreground and one for background elements.

background = (colour name)
colour key

This is the 'main background colour' for the picture as a whole. This colour is accessible within the chronos environment as chronos main background colour or chronos main background color. Whether it is used and, if so, how, depends on other settings. By default, it is used to determine the colours for the timeline itself and is the basis for the colours used in some tags. It is also used in some standard chronos styles.

Default: white

```
\begin{chronos}
  [
    background=magenta,
  ]
 \end{chronos}
```

foreground = (colour name) colour key

This is the 'main foreground colour' for the picture as a whole. This colour is accessible within the chronos environment as chronos main colour or chronos main color. Whether it is used and, if so, how, depends on other settings. By default, it is used to determine the colours for the timeline itself and is the basis for the colours used in some tags. It is also used as the default colour for connections, lines and text tags and in some standard chronos styles.

Default: black

\begin{chronos}
 [
 foreground=red,
 ]
 \end{chronos}

-40 of 125 -

For other colours, see sections 8.4.5 and 8.8.

#### Timeline 8.4

See section 6.1 for an overview of the timeline's components and construction.

Placing different elements on different layers enables the same basic building blocks to result in different styles, but the blocks may also be configured directly. The layers on which the connections and lines of items connected to the timeline are drawn also affects the appearance. For example, putting connections behind the border results in circular chronos connectors appearing as semicircles. Chronos's use of layers is explained in sections 6.4 and 10.

connections on = background|middle ground|main|foreground|overlay

timeline/timeline on Which layer each type of element should be placed on. Aside from main these are not standard timeline/border on layers. In particular, background is not the standard TikZ background layer, but instead refers choice key to the chronos background layer.

Default: dependent on other options

See section 6.4.

The timeline should be configured using the following key.

```
timeline = {\langle key-value \ list \rangle}
         key
```

 $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$  should be a list of chronos keys from the timeline configuration options. These keys may also be accessed more verbosely as /chronos/timeline/ $\langle key name \rangle$  or, in the  $\langle chronos \rangle$ preamble) or in  $\chronosset$  as timeline/key name). Some may also work without the timeline/ prefix, but this is not guaranteed and may break without notice in future releases.

```
\begin{chronos}
  Ε
   timeline={% timeline configuration
      dates={1310-02-03}:{1350-06-07},
      timeline foreground=black,
      timeline background=gray,
     minor years,
      timeline height=5pt,
      timeline width=\textwidth.
      timeline era margin=10pt,
     major step font=\sffamily\bfseries,
     minor step font=\sffamily\bfseries\small,
      timeline minor marks,
      timeline marks,
      timeline years=above,
   }.
 ٦
\end{chronos}
```

Timeline configuration keys are prefixed with timeline/ in this manual.

#### 8.4.1**Timeline Dates**

date key

timeline/dates =  $\langle start \ date \rangle : \langle end \ date \rangle$ 

The fist and last date to be represented on the timeline. Dates must be specified as explained in section 8.2. This key offers a more compact syntax as an alternative to the keys start date and end date (or start and end) explained below. That is

```
\begin{chronos}
  Г
    timeline={%
```

-41 of 125 -

```
dates={1310-02-03}:{1350-06-07},
  % equivalent to
    start date={1310-02-03},
    end date={1350-06-07},
  % equivalent to
    start={1310-02-03},
    end={1350-06-07},
  },
  ]
\end{chronos}
```

```
timeline/start date = \{\langle date \rangle\}
timeline/start
date key The first date to represent on the timeline, specified as explained in section 8.2.
```

```
\begin{chronos}
  [
    timeline={%
      start date={1310-02-03},
    % equivalent to
      start={1310-02-03},
    },
    ]
\end{chronos}
```

timeline/end date =  $\{\langle date \rangle\}$ 

timeline/end date key The last date to represent on the timeline, specified as explained in section 8.2.

```
\begin{chronos}
  [
    timeline={%
      end date={1350-06-07},
    % equivalent to
      end={1350-06-07},
    },
    ]
\end{chronos}
```

### 8.4.2 Timeline Dimensions

See note 8.1.5.1.

The dimensions of the timeline line and border are illustrated in fig. 19.

The total height of the timeline is a function of the dimensions timeline height and timeline border height:

```
timeline height + 2 \cdot \text{timeline border height}
```

The total width is timeline width. The width includes the width used to represent the time covered by the timeline and twice the timeline margin. If era labels are used, the width also includes the space used for these<sup>22</sup> and the timeline era margins.

For example,

```
\begin{chronos}
 [
   timeline={%
    timeline height=10mm,
    timeline border height=2.5mm,
```

 $<sup>^{22}</sup>$ I am grateful to Martin Scharrer for providing the code implementing this at T<sub>E</sub>X StackExchange: 56405.



Figure 19: Timeline dimensions.

```
timeline width=200mm,
timeline mark eras,
timeline margin=5mm,
timeline era margin=2.5mm,
dates={-200}:2000,
},
]
\end{chronos}
```

would result in a total timeline height of 15mm and a total timeline width of 200mm. The width used to represent the years from 200 BCE to 2000 CE would be

 $200 \text{mm} - 2 \cdot 5 \text{mm} - 2 \cdot 2.5 \text{mm} - \text{width of BCE label} - \text{width of CE label}$ 

that is,

185mm – width of BCE label – width of CE label

```
timeline/timeline height = \langle dimension \rangle
timeline/height
dimension key
Default: dependent on other options
```

For example,

timeline={						
timeline	height'=10mm,%	we	can	use	1	here
},						

**\timelineht** The height of the timeline. This macro is available only at the end of the \chronos preamble macro and can be considered reliable only within the \timeline specification \setminus^{23}. Despite its unreliability, early availability is essential to some chronos styles definitions. In these cases, the chronos style is responsible for ensuring accuracy (or compensating for inaccuracy). In standard cases, this happens automatically, even though it is not guaranteed. However, if you neither load a chronos style nor configure dimensions explicitly, you should not try to use this macro before the timeline is constructed.

```
timeline/timeline border = \langle dimension \rangle
height
dimension key The height of each of the upper and lower borders.
```

 $<sup>^{23}\</sup>mathrm{Note}$  that the unreliability applies to the internal macro, too.

Default: dependent on other options

For example,

```
timeline={
   timeline border height'+=2.5pt,% we can use ' here
},
```

\timelineborderht The height of the border. This macro is available only within the  $\langle timeline specification \rangle$ .

timeline/timeline width =  $\langle dimension \rangle$ 

timeline/width dimension key The total width of the timeline, including margins.

Default: \textwidth

For example,

```
timeline={
  timeline width=.75\paperheight,% we cannot use ' here
  timeline width'-=10mm,% we can use ' here
}.
```

\timelinewd The width of the timeline. This macro is available only within the  $\langle timeline specification \rangle$ .

```
\begin{array}{c} macro \\ \texttt{timeline/timeline margin} = \langle dimension \rangle \\ dimension \ key \ \_ \end{array}
```

The horizontal space to allow at each of the two ends of the timeline.

Default: 15pt

For example,

```
timeline={
   timeline margin'+=-2.5pt,% we can use ' here
},
```

timeline/timeline era =  $\langle dimension \rangle$ 

margin dimension key The horizontal space to allow between the first/last point on the timeline and the era labels.

```
Default: 15pt
```

For example,

```
timeline={
  timeline era margin+=0.05,% we can't use ' here
},
```

The following keys determine dimensions of the **chronos** picture as a whole. They do not affect the dimensions of the **timeline** itself.

headings border = \langle dimension\rangle
dimension key
The distance between the top of the highest level and the top of the space used for headers.
Default: 15pt + \langle headings drop\rangle + \langle upper subheadings drop\rangle + \langle lower subheadings drop\rangle (if
there are one or more levels above the timeline)
Default: 5pt + \langle headings drop\rangle + \langle upper subheadings drop\rangle + \langle lower subheadings drop\rangle (otherwise)
headings drop
dimension key

The distance between the top of the border and the headings.

Default: Opt (if headings are omitted)

- 44 of 125 -

su

	Note that you should set this explicitly to Opt if using subheadings without headings.
	= { $\langle \text{dimension } 1 \rangle$ }:{ $\langle \text{dimension } 2 \rangle$ }
dimension key	The distances between the headings and upper subheadings and between the tops of the upper subheadings and lower subheadings.
	Default: Opt:Opt (if headings are omitted)
	Default: 12pt:10pt (if headings are used)
	Note that you should set this explicitly to $Opt:Opt$ , $\langle dimension \rangle:Opt$ or $Opt:\langle dimension \rangle$ if using headings without upper subheadings and/or lower subheadings or only one of upper subheadings or lower subheadings.
	= { $\langle \text{dimension } 1 \rangle$ }:{ $\langle \text{dimension } 2 \rangle$ }:{ $\langle \text{dimension } 3 \rangle$ }
headings'+ headings'- dimension key	A convenience key equivalent to setting headings drop' to $\langle dimension 1 \rangle$ and subheadings drops' to $\langle dimension 2 \rangle$ and $\langle dimension 3 \rangle$ . Note that only the ' forms are available. For pgfmath support, use headings drop and subheadings drops.
	= $\langle dimension \rangle$
dimension key	If a frame is created, this is the outer border. In effect, the bounding box will be set to be this distance from the frame, less half the line width used to draw it.
	Default: 5pt
	$= \{\langle dimension \rangle\}: \{\langle$
borders'+ borders'- dimension key	Sets the headings border, top border, right border, bottom border, left border and outer border in one go. Note that only the ' forms are available. For pgfmath support, use top border, right border, left border, bottom border and headings border.
	If you're not sure what this key does or uncertain whether to use it, it is not the key you are looking for. Setting the outer border and headings border suffices in most cases.
•	= $\langle dimension \rangle$
left border	If the frame does not use the bounding box, these dimensions determine the internal margin between each of the top of the headings, the timeline's right end, the bottom of the lowest level, the timeline's left end and the frame, less half the line width used to draw the frame.
	Default: Opt
	Most people should let the frame use the bounding box, which is the default, and leave these

Most people should let the frame use the bounding box, which is the default, and leave these dimensions alone.

#### 8.4.3 Timeline Marks and Years

Default: 15pt (if headings are used)

Chronos offers two primary styles of timeline. In one, the line has sufficient vertical depth (timeline height) for years, era labels and marks to be drawn on the timeline itself. In the other, the timeline may be much thinner, with marks, era labels and years drawn above or below the line. In this case, the marks appear to grow out from the line and the year labels float slightly above or below.

It is also possible to use **chronos** to draw a line with neither marks nor years. Alternatively, you might want to create 'invisible' marks or years, which may be useful for placement purposes<sup>24</sup>. Figure 19 shows a timeline in which this has been done by setting the foreground and background colours equal. The nodes are used to place the arrows and labels illustrating the various dimension keys.

 $<sup>^{24} \</sup>rm You$  don't need this simply to connect elements to the timeline. chronos doesn't depend on the creation of marks or years for that purpose.



Figure 20: Illustration of event years on line.

### timeline/timeline years = on line|off line|above|below|none

choice key

Whether years (and any era labels and marks) should be created on the timeline, off it or not at all and, if they should be off the timeline, whether they should be above or below it. The options are mutually exclusive, except that off line implies either above or below. See also minor years, timeline marks, timeline minor marks and timeline bare marks, which further determine what exactly is shown.

Default: none

Initially: on line

it may actually make sense to write something like

```
\begin{chronos}
  [
   timeline={%
    timeline years=off line,
    timeline years=none,
   },
  ]
 \end{chronos}
```

if one wants an off-line style of line with no years or marks. I don't know why one *would* want such a thing, but the possibility is there.

**none** is actually intended to support a particular style of **event**-only **timeline**, in which the dates are created on the line itself.

event years on line Don't create regular year labels or marks on the timeline itself. Instead, put the years of *key* subsequently added events onto the line. This option creates a timeline suitable for showing years on the timeline, but doesn't create any labels when drawing the line itself.

Assuming timeline years is not set to none, as it is if event years on line is enabled, the following keys determine how and where chronos represents time on (or off) the timeline itself. The primary concepts here are those of major steps and minor steps. The space available to represent time on the timeline (see section 8.4.2) is divided into major steps and, optionally, further divided into minor steps. These can be highlighted with timeline marks and timeline minor marks and are set using step major year and step minor year.

In addition to years, timeline bare marks may be used to create unlabelled subdivisions at intermediate points. In the standard case, the value of step divisions is used to divide the distance equally. For example, if you specify 5, chronos will use 4 lines to subdivide each. No attempt is made to place these so they correspond to any particular date: if you request 12, chronos will not make the division for February smaller than the one for December.

### BCE 500 3000 500 2000 500 1000 500 1 500 1000 CE

(a) Default selection of major yearss and minor yearss.

#### BCE 3810 3310 2810 2310 1810 1310 810 310 190 690 1190 CE

(b) Selected major yearss and minor yearss with step from year=3810.

Figure 21: Default (fig. 21a) and non-default (fig. 21b) selection of major years and minor years when dates={-3814}:1213, step major year=1000 and step minor year=500.

However, if a timeline is short, chronos proceeds differently. 'Short' refers to temporal duration rather than dimension and includes any timeline which begins and ends in the same year or in consecutive years. timeline/minor years = true|false  $boolean \ key$ Whether to label minor years, in addition to major years. Default: true Initially: true timeline/step major year = { $\langle positive integer \rangle$ } timeline/step major years  $\frac{1}{key}$  How often to label major years on the timeline if showing them. Use this key if you want a larger or bolder font and/or a different date format and/or thicker or longer marks to be used for some year labels. You can also use this key if you want all year labels on the timeline to use the same format. For example, you might want to print the full 4 digits of the year each thousand years. Default: dependent on other options timeline/step minor year = { $\langle positive integer \rangle$ } timeline/step minor years  $\overline{key}$  How often to label minor years on the timeline if displaying them. The idea is that you might want a smaller or lighter font and/or a different date format and/or thinner or shorter marks to be used for intermediate year labels. For example, you might want to print full years only every millennium and the last 3 digits of the year each century. Default: dependent on other options Chronos labels minor years only if labelling major years. Although the package attempts to correct the result if only minor years are requested, it is better to use step minor year only in conjunction with major years. timeline/step year = { $\langle positive integer \rangle$ } timeline/step years ars key How often to label years on the timeline, if you want them all to be formatted in the same way. This key sets step major years internally and unsets step minor year. Default: dependent on other options Chronos tries to label years modulo the step major year and step minor year (or step year). This means you can start the timeline at 3,814 BCE, request major years every millennium and minor years every half millennium without worrying about which year should be the first (labelled) year. Figure 21 illustrates chronos's default choices in this case. Note that the first year is not determined by the start date alone in fig. 21a, but is determined in conjunction with step major year and step minor year so that -1 BCE ends (and 1 CE begins) at a major year and the turn of millennia generally occur at major years, while the first minor year is 3,500 BCE. timeline/step from year = { $\langle integer \rangle$ } key

Do not use this key unless chronos produces undesirable results by default. If for some reason you do not want years on the timeline to be determined modulo step major year and step

minor year, you may tell chronos where to begin stepping from. In this case, chronos will issue a warning, but it will implement your choice.

Default: dependent on other options

Note that fig. 21b effectively includes no major yearss because chronos tests whether the current year is modulo the step major year when deciding how to format the year label and markss.

chronos year  $\langle YYYY \rangle$  Every major year and minor year receives a name: a node or coordinate is created with the name chronos year  $-\langle YYYY \rangle$  chronos year YYYY for CE and chronos year -YYYY for BCE. No zeros are added, so years with fewer than four digits get nodes or coordinates with names such as chronos year -1. Chronos year  $-\langle YYYY \rangle$  chronos year  $-\langle YYYY \rangle$  creates all years at the beginning of the year i.e. 1<sup>st</sup> January. (This is analogous to a ruler which marks each centimetre at its beginning.)

- chronos origin If the timeline spans the switch of eras from BCE to CE and the years represented on the timeline coordinate are modulo an additional coordinate named chronos origin is created at the era switch point, chronos year 1.
- chronos year 0 If year zero is false, as it is by default, a third coordinate named chronos year 0 is created coordinate at chronos origin<sup>25</sup>.
- timeline/step divisions = { $\langle positive integer \rangle$ }

Whether the timeline should be further subdivided between major and/or minor years using bare marks and, if so, how many sub-divisions should be made. These are simple subdivisions of the distance between points. Unlike the labels/marks made for years, they do not involve calculations involving dates and are not named.

Default: dependent on other options

timeline/timeline year = { $\langle key - value \ list \rangle$ }

Adds  $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$  to the common style used when putting major years and minor years onto the timeline. Do not specify font or anchor here as they will be overridden. Although both major and minor years use the same general style, they may and, by default do, use different fonts and date format keys.

Example: timeline/timeline year=fill=chronos timeline background colour

Default: text= $\langle timeline\ foreground \rangle$ , text opacity=1, align=center, fill opacity=.75 (off line)

Default: text=(*timeline foreground*), anchor=center (on line)

timeline/timeline years =  $\{\langle text \rangle\}$ 

anchor

hor  $_{key}$  The TikZ anchor to use when creating the nodes for years on or off the timeline. Do not set this option unless you know you need to. In most cases, chronos will pick a sensible default. The key is provided primarily for cases where you want to rotate the year labels in styles which place them off the line. Even then, you should not need to change the setting if using a style designed for rotation, unless you need to change the angle.

Default: dependent on other options

timeline/timeline marks = true|false boolean key

Whether to draw vertical marks on or off the timeline at major years using the style set with timeline mark.

Default: true

Initially: true

timeline/timeline minor = true|false

mar.

marks  $2^{5}$ So the non-existent year zero is marked at the same point as the existent year one. This avoids complications in \foreach loops.

Whether to draw vertical marks on or off the timeline at minor years using the style set with timeline minor mark.

Default: true

Initially: true

timeline/timeline show = true|false
 years ....

boolean key Whether to represent years on or off the timeline at all. If false, neither labels nor marks will be added when the timeline is constructed. This is useful if you wish to use a style such as event years on line, but is the nuclear option otherwise.

Default: true

Initially: true

timeline/timeline bare = true|false

marks boolean key Whether to draw bare marks on or off the timeline in between years<sup>26</sup> using the style set by timeline bare mark. If you specify step divisions, this key will be automatically enabled. If you don't want bare marks, don't set/set to zero step divisions.

Default: true

Initially: false

# timeline/timeline mark = { $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$ }

Adds to the style used for the vertical lines drawn when chronos labels a major year on or off the timeline and timeline marks is true. These correspond to the major steps at which chronos puts years.

 $Example: \verb"timeline mark=thick"$ 

Default: draw=(timeline foreground), Triangle[width=Opt 3,reversed,length=Opt 1.5]-, thin, shorten >=-2.5pt (off line)

Default: draw= $\langle timeline \ foreground \rangle$  (on line)

- timeline/timeline minor = { $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$ }
  - key Adds  $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$  to the style used for the vertical lines drawn when chronos labels a minor year on or off the timeline and timeline minor marks is true. These correspond to the minor steps at which chronos puts years.

Example: timeline mark=thin, shorten >=-2pt

Default: draw=(timeline foreground), Triangle[width=Opt 3,reversed,length=Opt 1.5]-, very thin, shorten >=-2.5pt (off line)

Default: draw= $\langle timeline \ foreground \rangle$ , thin (on line)

timeline/timeline bare mark = { $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$ }

key

Adds  $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$  to the style used to draw lines at step divisions, provided timeline marks is true.

Example: timeline bare mark=thin, <-

Default: draw=(timeline foreground), Triangle[width=Opt 3,reversed,length=Opt 1.5]-, very thin, shorten >=-1.5pt (off line)

Default: draw=(timeline foreground), thick (on line)

timeline/timeline all marks = { $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$ }

Adds to the styles used to draw lines at major years, minor years and step divisions. This is equivalent to passing  $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$  to each of timeline mark, timeline minor mark and timeline bare mark.

- event year on line The style used to mark years on the timeline if event years on line is enabled. By default, the *style* style otherwise used for years when on the line is used. Redefine this if you wish, but you could also use timeline years, since no other years will be set on the line anyway.
- event year on line skip Don't put this particular event's year on the timeline. This can be used if the line would otherwise key become too crowded. See section 9.3.
- timeline/era switch off The style to use if years are 'off line' and mark at era switch is true. With the standard line settings, you would get a small mark at the switch, no different from other intermediate marks. *style* Likely you want something more similar in stature to the year labels. Redefine or supplement using standard TikZ techniques.

Default: thick, shorten >=Opt

```
\begin{chronos}
  [
   timeline={%
     era switch off line/.append style={ultra thick},% retain undoing of shortening
in default, but make mark thicker
     era switch off line/.style={ultra thick, shorten>=-2pt},% make mark thicker and
longer
     era switch off line/.style={shorten>=-2pt},% make mark longer but use whatever
thickness is used for other marks
     },
     ]
     \end{chronos}
```

#### 8.4.4 Timeline Fonts

major step font = { $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$ }

The font used for major years.

Default:

```
\begin{chronos}
  [
    timeline={%
        major step font=\sffamily,
      },
    ]
\end{chronos}
```

timeline/minor step font = { $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$ }

The font used for minor years.

Default:

```
\begin{chronos}
  [
   timeline={%
     minor step font=\sffamily\small,
   },
  ]
 \end{chronos}
```

timeline/eras font = { $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$ }

The font used for era labels on the timeline.

### Default:

```
\begin{chronos}
  Ε
    timeline={%
      eras font=\sffamily\bfseries\large,
    }.
 ]
\end{chronos}
```

#### **Timeline Colours** 8.4.5

```
timeline/timeline border = (colour name)
```

inner colour timeline/timeline border The innermost colour used for the gradient used to shade the timeline borders, if any. This colour inner color is accessible within the chronos environment as chronos timeline border inner colour or colour key chronos timeline border inner color.

Default: the timeline background colour, which is itself black by default.

```
\begin{chronos}
  Ε
    timeline={%
      timeline border inner colour=blue,
    }.
 ٦
\end{chronos}
```

timeline/timeline border = (colour name)

outer colour timeline/timeline border The outermost colour used for the gradient used to shade the timeline borders, if any. This colour outer color is accessible within the chronos environment as chronos timeline border outer colour or colour key chronos timeline border outer color.

Default: the background colour, which is itself white by default.

```
\begin{chronos}
  Г
    timeline={%
      timeline border outer colour=green!5!white,
    }.
 ]
\end{chronos}
```

timeline/timeline border = (colour name)

middle colour timeline/timeline border

The middle colour used for the gradient used to shade the idx post=colour configuramiddle color tion[type=element,idx as=timeline border]timeline borders, if any. This colour is accessible within colour key the chronos environment as chronos timeline border middle colour or chronos timeline border middle color

> Default: a 50-50 mix of the timeline border outer colour and timeline border inner colour.

```
\begin{chronos}
  Ε
    timeline={%
      timeline border middle colour=blue!20!green,
    }.
  ]
\end{chronos}
```



Figure 22: Cumulative effect of colour settings given as examples in sections 8.4.5 and 8.8.

timeline/timeline = (colour name)

background The colour used for the background of the central part of the timeline. This colour is accesscolour key ible within the chronos environment as chronos timeline background colour or chronos timeline background color.

> Default: the foreground colour, which is itself black by default (if putting years/marks on the line).

Default: the background colour, which is itself white by default (otherwise).

```
\begin{chronos}
  Ε
    timeline={%
      timeline background=blue,
    },
 ]
\end{chronos}
```

#### timeline/timeline = (colour name) foreground

colour key The colour used for the foreground of the central part of the timeline. This colour is accessible within the chronos environment as chronos timeline foreground colour or chronos timeline foreground color.

Default: the background colour, which is itself white by default (if putting years/marks on the line).

Default: the **foreground** colour, which is itself **black** by default (otherwise).

```
\begin{chronos}
  Г
    timeline={%
      timeline foreground=green!5!white,
    },
 ٦
\end{chronos}
```

The cumulative effect of the colour settings given in the examples in this section, together with the background and foreground from section 8.8 is shown in fig. 22.

#### **Timeline Style** 8.4.6

The timeline's overall style can be customised using the following keys, which should (and, by default, do) utilise colours from the colour scheme (see section 13.2). Unless you are creating a chronos style, it is best to add to rather than replacing the existing configuration. For example, if you wish the line to take the form of an arrow, you can simply add the use of an appropriate arrow tip, without modifying the colours, dimensions or markings.

timeline/timeline line = { $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$ }

timeline/timeline line'

timeline/timeline line+ The style of the timeline line. timeline/timeline line+ adds to the current list; timeline/timeline *key* line and timeline/timeline line' replace it.

Default: empty

Initially: dependent on other options

This key makes it possible to override the default drawing or filling of the timeline lines.

For example, blues below includes the following in its timeline configuration,

```
timeline={%
...
timeline line={Bar-Latex,chronos timeline foreground colour,double=chronos timeline
background colour,line width=\timelineht/3,double distance=\timelineht/3,shorten <=-\
timelineht/3,shorten >=-3pt-2.1\timelineht},
timeline config+={\pgfqkeys{/chronos/timeline}{timeline width-={3pt+2.43\timelineht}}},
...
}
```

To make the timeline line into an arrow, without otherwise modifying the existing style, use, for example,

```
timeline={%
...
timeline line+={shorten >={-10mm}, -{Triangle Cap[length=10mm]}},
timeline config+={\pgfqkeys{/chronos/timeline}{timeline width-=10mm}},
...
}
```

The adjustments are required to ensure that the tapered part is not counted when chronos calculates how much of the total timeline width is available to represent time.

timeline/timeline arrow = true|false  $boolean\ key$ Whether the timeline should be or have an arrow or arrows. Default: true Initially: false Whether this has any effect depends entirely on the chronos style. With the default settings, it does nothing but trigger a warning, since on line styles cannot have arrows. timeline/no timeline arrow A convenience key which sets timeline/timeline arrow false. Whether this has any effect key depends entirely on the chronos style. timeline/timeline border = { $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$ } timeline/timeline border' timeline/timeline border+ The style of the timeline border. timeline/timeline border+ adds to the current list; key timeline/timeline border and timeline/timeline border' replace it. Default: empty Initially: dependent on other options This key makes it possible to override the default gradients used to fill the **borders**. 8.5Frame frame = true|false boolean key

Whether to draw a frame. This is initially false, but use of main/frame will automatically set it to true.

Default: true

Initially: false

-53 of 125 -

main/frame'

Whether the bounding box should be used to determine any frame at the end of the chronos environment. This is true by default and almost certainly what you want unless you are smuggling code into the end of the environment or using the frame for nefarious purposes.

Default: true

Initially: true

main/frame = { $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$ }

main/frame The style of the TikZ node used to draw the frame. This may be freely redefined as desired.

*key* Default: empty

Example: main/frame={draw=black,ultra thick,inner sep=5pt}

Example: main/frame+={double=blue}

The second form may be useful if you wish to modify, rather than replace, a style defined by a chronos style. main/frame and main/frame' replace any current list; main/frame+ adds to it.

#### 8.6 Placing Things: Levels & Coordinates

Knowing where to put things may get tricky in complicated or densely-packed timelines. Chronos offers several techniques to help. The simplest is to simply use existing items as reference points. Chronos names coordinates and nodes routinely and predictably, as explained throughout this documentation. However, sometimes this isn't quite enough. Levels and chronos coordinates offer additional help with vertical and horizontal placement respectively.

#### 8.6.1 Levels

Levels are not (generally) visible elements. They are instead part of the structure behind-the-scenes. They are, if you like, minimal stage-hands.

The idea is to tell chronos how many tiers (approximately) of elements you will create above and below the timeline. For each of these levels, chronos creates a standardised node or placeholder based on the settings used for elements of type life when the timeline is constructed. Each of these nodes is named: level 1, level 2, ... above the timeline and level -1, level -2, ... below<sup>27</sup>. The first node in each direction is shifted 2pt from the timeline. Subsequent nodes are created directly above each other, with no separation between.

Together with points on the timeline, you then have a crude system for placing things horizontally and vertically. It also enables you to 'stack' text tags, but create them in any order.

 $levels = \{(number above)\}: \{(number below)\}$ 

(number above) and (number below) should be non-negative integers specifying how many levels to create above and below the timeline respectively.

Default:

key

no number of levels are created by default (not even zero).

\begin{chronos} Г levels=4:4, ٦ \end{chronos}

```
levels at = {\langle coordinate \rangle}
         key _
```

 $^{27}\mathrm{You}$  can also refer to the nodes above as <code>u1</code>, <code>u2</code> etc. and those below as <code>i1</code>, <code>i2</code> etc.

Although they are not intended to be visible in the timeline, placeholder nodes may be rendered visible for debugging or development purposes. As such, it may be useful to move them from their default location.

#### Default: chronos mid

```
\begin{chronos}
  Ε
    levels at=chronos year -200,% make sure this exists!
  ٦
\end{chronos}
```

To render the nodes temporarily visible, see section 14.

#### 8.6.2 **Chronos Coordinates**

In addition to the coordinates and nodes shown in fig. 3, chronos names a coordinate or node chronos year  $\langle year \rangle$  for each year represented on the timeline. However, depending on your preferred style, this may not provide sufficient horizontal reference points. In that case, you can create additional coordinates. Like levels, chronos coordinates are not ordinarily visible; unlike levels, there is nothing there to  $\sec^{28}$ .

comma-separated list key

chronos coords = { $\langle comma-separated \ list \ of \ years \rangle$ }

For each (year) in (comma-separated list of years), chronos will place a single coordinate named chronos year  $\langle year \rangle$  at the appropriate point on the timeline. These may be used together with levels to specify coordinates e.g. (chronos year  $\langle year \rangle$  | - level  $\langle n \rangle$ ) is the point vertically aligned with level  $\langle n \rangle$  and horizontally aligned with chronos year  $\langle year \rangle$ .

Default: empty

#### 8.6.3 Miscellaneous

\chronosbaselineskip The chronos environment sets this macro equal to the current \baselineskip. It may be used *macro* to fine-tune placement in the same way you might use \baselineskip outside a tikzpicture.

#### 8.7 Headings

headings+

headings = { $\langle text \rangle / \langle coordinate 1 \rangle / \langle coordinate 2 \rangle, \langle text \rangle / \langle coordinate 1 \rangle / \langle coordinate 2 \rangle, \dots$  }

headings' List of value triplets in the format used by PGF's \foreach. The list should consist of one comma-separated list key or more triplets where  $\langle text \rangle$  is used in capitalised form for the content of a node which will be aligned with chronos main headings vertically and placed midway between the horizontal positions of  $\langle coordinate 1 \rangle$  and  $\langle coordinate 2 \rangle$ . headings and headings + add to the current list; headings' replaces it.

Default: none

See section 8.7.1 for an example.

```
heading = {\langle text \rangle}{\langle coordinate 1 \rangle}{\langle coordinate 2 \rangle}
```

heading+

heading' Add or set a single heading. These forms require the same information as headings, headings+  $\check{key}$  and headings' but as three separate arguments.

Default: none

See section 8.7.1 for an example.

subheadings = { $\langle text \rangle / \langle coordinate 2 \rangle / \langle coordinate 3 \rangle$ ,  $\langle text \rangle / \langle coordinate 1 \rangle / \langle coordinate 2 \rangle / \langle coordinate 3 \rangle$ ,  $\langle text \rangle / \langle coordinate 1 \rangle / \langle coordinate 2 \rangle / \langle coordinate 3 \rangle$ ,  $\langle text \rangle / \langle text \rangle / \langle coordinate 3 \rangle$ ,  $\langle text \rangle / \langle text \rangle$ subheadings+  $3\rangle,\ldots\}$ 

subheadings'

comma-separated list key <sup>28</sup>You could label them, of course, but they are just regular PGF/TikZ coordinates and so naturally invisible.

List of value quadruplets in the format used by PGF's \foreach. The list should consist of one or more quadruplets where  $\langle text \rangle$  is used in capitalised form for the content of a node which will be aligned with  $\langle coordinate 4 \rangle$  vertically and placed midway between the horizontal positions of (coordinate 1) and (coordinate 2). (coordinate 4) should be either chronos upper subheadings or chronos lower subheadings. subheadings and subheadings+ add to the current list; subheadings' replaces it.

Default: none

See section 8.7.1 for an example.

subheading = { $\langle text \rangle$ }{ $\langle coordinate 1 \rangle$ }{ $\langle coordinate 2 \rangle$ }{ $\langle coordinate 3 \rangle$ }

subleading' Add or set a single subheading horizontally aligned with the midpoint between the horizontal posi- $\overset{\circ}{key}$  tions of (coordinate 1) and (coordinate 2) and vertically aligned with (coordinate 3). (coordinate 3 should be either chronos lower subheadings or chronos upper subheadings, though this is not enforced. These forms require the same information as subheadings, subheadings+ and subheadings' but as four separate arguments.

Default: none

See section 8.7.1 for an example.

century subheadings =  $\{\langle number \ list \rangle\} \{\langle text \rangle\}$ century subheadings+ century subheadings'

Create a subheading aligned with chronos lower subheadings for each of the centuries specified *comma-separated list key* in = $\langle number list \rangle$ , using  $\langle text \rangle$  as the superscript for each. Note that for the *n*th century chronos year coordinates much exist for both the year n00 and the year (n+1)00. century subheadings and century subheadings+ add to the current list; century subheadings' replaces it.

Default: none

See section 8.7.1 for an example.

```
century subheading = \{\langle number \rangle\} \{\langle text \rangle\}
```

century subheading+

century subheading. Add or set a single century subheading. These forms require the same information as  $\breve{key}$  century subheadings, century subheadings+ and century subheadings' but expect a single  $\langle number \rangle$ .

Default: none

See section 8.7.1 for an example.

#### 8.7.1 Example

For example, here's an excerpt from the code used for fig. 2 which demonstrates the use of keys to create headings and subheadings.

```
\begin{chronos}
    Ε
      timeline={%
        dates={-500}:1500,
      },
      chronos coords={-500,-450,...,1500},
      headings={heading/chronos year 800/chronos year 1500, another heading/chronos year
-450/chronos year 1,a third heading/chronos year 100/chronos year 800},
      subheadings={subheading on upper level/chronos year -250/chronos year 500/chronos
upper subheadings, subheading on lower level/chronos start/chronos year -100/chronos
lower subheadings, another subheading/chronos year 1000/chronos year 1500/chronos upper
subheadings, yet another subheading/chronos year 500/chronos year 1000/chronos lower
subheadings},
      century subheadings={12,13,...,15}{th},
      century subheading={1}{st},
   ]
```

#### \end{chronos}

Note the use of chronos coords to add coordinates for years which may not be visibly represented on the timelines. This ensures the chronos year coordinates needed to place headings, subheadings and century subheadings exist. It is permissible for coordinates to lie beyond the timeline's end date, though you may get strange results if you create coordinates too distant from the endpoint.

#### 8.7.2 Headings Configuration

headings style = { $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$ } headings style<sup>+</sup> PGF/TikZ options to apply to headings. headings style and headings style' replace the *key* current list; **headings style+** replaces it. Default: empty Example: headings style={align=center, anchor=base, inner sep=0pt, outer sep=0pt, color=chronos main colour, opacity=.8, font=\bfseries} Although the style is empty by default, anchor=base is passed to the node prior to the style. If you do not want this alignment, therefore, you must specify an alternative anchor. subheadings style = { $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$ } subneadings style' PGF/TikZ options to apply to subheadings. subheadings style and subheadings style' key replace the current list; subheadings style+ replaces it. Default: empty Example: subheadings style={align=center, anchor=base, inner sep=0pt, outer sep=0pt, font=\bfseries\itshape\footnotesize, color=chronos main colour!75!chronos main backgrou colour, opacity=.8} Although the style is empty by default, **anchor=base** is passed to the node prior to the style. If you do not want this alignment, therefore, you must specify an alternative anchor. Colours 8.8 For timeline colours, see section 8.4.5. For basic colours, see section 8.3.

The *easiest* way to customise colours is to load a colour scheme as explained in section 7.2.

The *simplest* way to make use of colours is to specify colours for elements manually. Defaults can be configured in the timeline setup.

life/default colour =  $\langle colour name \rangle$ 

event/default colour

period/default colour

Sets the default colour for elements of the specified type. This provides a fall-back colour and theory/default colour ensures some colour is always found, even when none is specified.

info/default colour Default: chronos main colour life/default color

event/default color See foreground in section 8.4.5. For example,

period/default color \begin{chronos} theory/default color Г info/default color life/default colour=chronos timeline foreground colour, colour key event/default colour=chronos timeline foreground colour!50!chronos main colour, period/default colour=chronos main colour, theory/default colour=chronos timeline background colour, info/default colour=chronos main colour!50!chronos main background colour, ] \end{chronos}

Alternatively or in addition, colours can be set on a per-element basis (sections 9.3 to 9.5).

#### 8.8.1 Colour Rotation

More complex configuration can be achieved using lists of colours from which chronos selects when adding elements to the timeline. If you wanted to typeset all elements of type life in the colours of the rainbow taken in order, for example, it would be error prone and inflexible to assign colours manually. Instead, we would like chronos to select the colours in turn, keep track of which colour is used for which element and automatically adjust the assignments if items are inserted or removed from the timeline.

To achieve this, chronos supports colour rotation for text tags, connections and lines of type life, event, period and theory.

Chronos assigns all elements belonging to tags life, event, period, theory and info a colour with a predictable colour name. Chronos determines the colour to assign to the element as follows.

- 1. First, chronos checks whether a colour has been specified for the element.
- $\vdash$  If it has, that colour is assigned.
- 2. If not, chronos checks whether colour rotation is enabled for the relevant type of element.
- ↓ If it is, chronos assigns the next colour from the specified colour list for the type of element in question and according to whether the element will be placed above or below the timeline. That colour is then moved to the bottom of the list.
- 3. If rotation is not enabled, a configurable default colour is assigned instead.

8 sets of colours can be configured which correspond to material placed above and below the timeline for each of default, life, event and period. See section 8.8.3 for details.

#### 8.8.2 Using Colours

There are at least two things you might want chronos to tell you about elements' colours. First, you might want to know the colour assigned to a particular element *after* the element is created. Second, you might want to know the colour assigned to the current element during creation. Note 8.8.2.1 addresses the first, note 8.8.2.2 the second.

**8.8.2.1** Colours by Element Name Regardless of how the colour assigned to an element ends up being determined, chronos assigns the colour a name derived from the element so that it can be used later, if required.

The result of this is that, assuming we have created an element of type life with name=donald knuth, we can write

\draw [chronos connect=life:donald knuth] (text tag connector donald knuth1) -- (text
tag connector metafont2);

to connect Donald Knuth with an element named metafont, which might be of type theory. The code used to draw the connection will use the same style and colour as any connection drawn between Donald Knuth and the timeline<sup>29</sup>. This colour can also be (and, by default, is) passed to the text tag. For example, a darker shade might be used for the text and outline of the node, and a paler one as a filling. The colour may also be accessed directly using colour donald knuth, color donald knuth or, if simple colour names are enabled<sup>30</sup>, simply donald knuth.

colour  $\langle name \rangle$  Colour names assigned to the element created with name=  $\langle name \rangle$ . life, event, period, theory, info color  $\langle name \rangle$ colour Note these names cannot be used during the element's creation in \chronos(tag).

- 58 of 125 -

 $<sup>^{29}</sup>$ See section 9.6

 $<sup>^{30}</sup>$ See sections 5 and 8.8.4.

	An additional name for colour $\langle name \rangle$ .	life, event, period, theory, info			
colour	Requires simple colour names.				
	<b>8.8.2.2 The Current Tag Colour</b> You may also wish to refer colour while creating it.	er to an element's assigned			
chronos current tag colour	The colour assigned to the current element during creation.	life, event, period, theory, info			
chronos current tag color colour					
	$\label{eq:example: hypersetup{urlcolor=chronos current tag colour} \\$				
	Figure 1 uses this code within a figure to override the colour of URL that each hyperlink's colour is the colour of the text tag to which it be				
	8.8.3 Colour Lists				
	The lists of colours for colour rotation (section $8.8.1$ ) may be loaded from directly.	om provided styles, specified			
	No specific lists are provided for <b>theory</b> , but you can obviously resertype, if you want distinct lists for everything.	ve the default lists for this			
colours above	$e = \langle \text{list of colour names} \rangle$				
colors above colour list key					
	Default: Red,Orange,Yellow,Green,Blue,MidnightBlue,Violet				
	= $\langle list of colour names \rangle$				
colors below colour list key	When given in the $\langle chronos \ preamble \rangle$ or to $\ chronosset$ , sets the below the timeline to $\langle list \ of \ colour \ names \rangle$ .	e default colour list for use			
	Default: Red,Orange,Yellow,Green,Blue,MidnightBlue,Violet				
colour rotation	= true false				
color rotation boolean key	When given in the $\langle chronos\ preamble\rangle$ or to <b>\chronosset</b> , determines by default or not.	whether colours are rotated			
	Default: true				
	This key does not override tag-specific settings. Depending on othe this key may have no effect or it may enable <b>colour rotation</b> for every	<u> </u>			
rotate all colors	When given in the $\langle chronos\ preamble \rangle$ or to $\chronosset$ , enables h and colour rotation for all supported tags. This key overrides tag-spectrum.				
no color rotation	When given in the $\langle chronos\ preamble \rangle$ or to $\backslash chronosset$ , disables d key does not override tag-specific settings. Depending on other setting may have no effect or it may prevent colour rotation completely.				
rotate no colors	When given in the $\langle chronos\ preamble \rangle$ or to $\chronosset$ , disables h and colour rotation for all tags. This key overrides tag-specific setting				
key	Note that, like many <b>chronos</b> keys, the effect of setting these depend That means that using a key when creating a tag of type life, for ex- different effect from using in the $\langle chronos \ preamble \rangle$ .				

- 59 of 125 -

	= $\langle list of colour names \rangle$
life/colors above colour list key	Sets the colour list for use with elements of type life placed above the timeline to (list of colour names).
	Default: empty
life/colours below	= $\langle list \ of \ colour \ names \rangle$
life/colors below colour list key	Sets the colour list for use with elements of type life placed below the timeline to $\langle list \ of \ colour \ names \rangle$ .
	Default: empty
	= $\langle list of colour names \rangle$
event/colors above colour list key	Sets the colour list for use with elements of type event placed above the timeline to $\langle list \ of \ colour \ names \rangle$ .
	Default: empty
	= $\langle list of colour names \rangle$
event/colors below colour list key	Sets the colour list for use with elements of type event placed below the timeline to $\langle list \ of \ colour \ names \rangle$ .
	= $\langle list of colour names \rangle$
period/colors above colour list key	Sets the colour list for use with elements of type period placed above the timeline to $\langle list \ of \ colour \ names \rangle$ .
	Default: empty
period/colours below	= $\langle list of colour names \rangle$
period/colors below colour list key	Sets the colour list for use with elements of type period placed below the timeline to $\langle list \ of \ colour \ names \rangle$ .
	Default: empty
	8.8.4 Simple Colour Names
	If you wish to enable or disable simple colour names (see sections 5 and 8.8) for a particular timeline, use one of the following two options.
simple colour names	= true false
simple color names boolean key	Enable or disable simple colour names.
-	Default: true
	Initially: true
	Example: simple colour names=false,
	See section 5 for details, but note that the keys here are implemented differently.
no simple colour names	Disable simple colour names.
no simple color names key	Example: no simple colour names,
	See section 5 for details, but note that the keys here are implemented differently. In particular, unlike both simple colour names and the load-time option, no simple colour names does <i>not</i> take an argument.

## 9 Adding Elements to the Timeline

See section 6.2 for an overview of the components available for use in the timeline's  $\langle timeline additions specification \rangle$ .

Seven macros are provided for adding elements to the timeline. Conceptually, these are always 'above' or 'below', though they could also be created to the left or right. For an overview of the way these commands work, see section 6.

### 9.1 Adding Connectable Elements

The most important kinds of additions **chronos** supports are those which can be connected to the timeline itself.

#### 9.1.1 Timeline-Connectable Elements

 $\ \ list \}$ 

macro

life

Create an element of type life. The  $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$  should specify values for chronos keys and may include arbitrary TikZ keys. At a minimum, name and birth must be specified for a living person. If the person is dead, both birth and death or dates should be given. If no date of death is specified, chronos assumes the person is living and uses the current date when placing the element on the timeline.

Table 5 summarises the chronos keys supported by elements of type life, with detailed usage information provided in sections 9.3 and 9.5.

Creating the element involves constructing, naming and connecting several components. These are described in table 6 for a typical case, but note that additional connectors require connectors to be set, the connection is drawn only if connect is true and some components may be rendered invisibly.

For example,

```
\chronoslife{%
   name=leslie lamport,
   birth={1941-02-07},
   at=leslie lamport |- u1.north,
   connectors=east,
   tag anchor=west,
   xshift=10pt,
}
```

This will create a text node (text tag) named tag leslie lamport with two connectors, 10pt to the right of coordinate (leslie lamport |-u1.north), using the settings for life. The main connector, named main connector leslie lamport or connector leslie lamport0, will be at the TikZ anchor west. This will be used as the TikZ anchor when placing the node and used to connect it to the timeline. A second connector, named connector leslie lamport1 will be created at the east, which may be used to connect the text tag to other elements.

A chronos connector, named chronos connector leslie lamport will be created on the timeline at the midpoint between 1941-02-07 and today's date. A line will also be marked on the timeline border, on the timeline or near the timeline, between these dates.

Note that the coordinate leslie lamport need not (and generally should not) exist when this command is given. of coordinates A coordinate of this name will be created on the timeline midway between the birth and death dates (or, in this case, between the birth date and today's date) prior to creation of the text tag. However, u1 must exist. In this case, it refers to a node created using the levels option. u1 is also known as level 1 and refers the the first level above the timeline. Lamport will be a bit higher because the text tag's west anchor will be aligned with the north of node level 1.

Ontion	l:fa	overst	noviad	theory	theory	info	main	copylef
Option	life	event	period	theory	circle	info	main	copyrigh
name	$\checkmark$							
as is	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	—	—	—	—
at	$\checkmark$							
at aux	$\checkmark$	_	$\checkmark$	—	—	—	—	_
tag anchor	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	—	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$
colour   color	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	—	$\checkmark$	—	_
connect	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	_	—	_	_	_
<pre>connectors   connectors+   connectors'</pre>	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	—	_	_	_
place above	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	_	_	_	_
place below	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	_	_	_	_
dates	$\checkmark$	_	$\checkmark$	_	_	_	_	_
date	_	$\checkmark$	_	_	_	_	_	_
birth	$\checkmark$	_	_	_	_	_	_	_
death	$\checkmark$	_	_	_	_	_	_	_
start	_	_	$\checkmark$	_	_	_	_	_
end	_	_	$\checkmark$	_	_	_	_	_
dates content	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	_	_	_	_	_
name content		√	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	_	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	1
text content		√	•	•	_	• •	-	-
event year on line skip	• _	•	• 	• 	_	• _	_	_
caption	_	v	_	_	_	.(	_	_
labels					$\checkmark$	v		
circle texts					v			
	_	_	_	_	V	_	—	_
sizes	_	_	_	_	v	_	_	_
author	_	_	_	_	—	_	—	V
copyleft	_	_	_	_	_	_	_	V
notice	_	_	_	_	_	_	_	V
rotate	_	_	_	_	_	_	_	V
year	—	_	_	_	_	_		$\checkmark$
date format	_	$\checkmark$	_	_	_	_	_	_
date formats	$\checkmark$	_	$\checkmark$	_	_	_	_	_
full dates	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	_	_	_	_	_
only years	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	_	_	_	_	_
show eras	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	_	_	_	_	_
without eras	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	_	_	_	_	_
only text	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	_	_	_	_	_
tag   tag+	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	_	$\checkmark$	_	_
connection   connection+	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	_	_	_	_
line   line+	$\checkmark$	_	$\checkmark$	_	_	_	_	_
line add yshift	, ,	_	$\checkmark$	_	_	_	_	_
text tag   text tag+		$\checkmark$	, ,	$\checkmark$	_	$\checkmark$	_	_
default colour   color	./	<b>↓</b>	•	<b>↓</b>	_	./	_	_
colours   colors above	• ./	v √	• ./	v √	_	• 	_	_
colours   colors below	<b>v</b>	v √	v	v		_	_	_
colour   color rotation	<b>v</b>	v √	<b>v</b>	<b>v</b>	_	_		_
	<b>v</b>	<b>v</b>	<b>v</b>	V	_	_	_	_
text tag yshift	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$		_	_	_

Table 5: Keys which are enabled ( $\checkmark$ ) and disabled/ineffective (-) for tag contexts associated with chronos macros.

Element	Name	Description	Ti <i>k</i> Z Type
_	$\langle name \rangle$	Point on timeline midway between $\langle birth \rangle$ and $\langle death \rangle$ (life) or $\langle start \rangle$ and $\langle end \rangle$ (period).	coordinate
line	-	Line or rectangle on or near timeline or timeline border from $\langle birth \rangle$ to $\langle death \rangle$ (life) or $\langle start \rangle$ to $\langle end \rangle$ (period).	\path
chronos connector	chronos connector $\langle name  angle$	Connection point midway along line.	node
text tag	tag $\langle name \rangle$	Main box representing element. By default, con- tains dates above capitalised $\langle name \rangle$ (life) or cap- italised $\langle name \rangle$ above dates (period).	node
main connector	main connector $\langle name  angle$	Connection point at $TikZ$ anchor of text tag.	node
connection	-	Line between the chronos connector and main connector.	\draw
connectors	connector $\langle name \rangle n$	Secondary connection point(s) at TikZ anchor(s) of text tag, named in order with $n = 1, 2,$	node

Table 6: Components of elements of tag types life and period.

Since the text tag is shifted right, the connection will be drawn using |- rather than --. If more complex paths are required, connect=false may be used and the text tag connected to the timeline manually. A chronos connector, chronos connector leslie lamport, would then be created on the timeline, as would the connectors on the text tag, but the connection itself would be omitted.

In addition, a colour named colour leslie lamport or color leslie lamport will be created. This is typically used in the styles responsible for the appearance of the text tag, line, connection and connectors and may be referenced and reused later. If simple colour names or simple color names are used, it may also be referenced as leslie lamport.

#### 

macro

event

Create an element of type event. This is intended for events spanning no more than a day. The  $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$  should specify values for chronos keys and may include arbitrary TikZ keys. At a minimum, name and date should be specified.

Table 5 summarises the chronos keys supported by elements of type event, with detailed usage information provided in sections 9.3 and 9.5.

Creating the element involves constructing, naming and connecting several components. These are described in table 7 for a typical case, but note that additional connectors require connectors to be set, the connection is drawn only if connect is true and some components may be rendered invisibly.

For example,

```
\chronosevent {%
   name=\emph{Common Sense},
   as is,
   yshift=5pt,
   date=1776,
   text=WildStrawberry,% will affect text for the element itself but not drawing,
filling or the assigned colour
   place below,% does nothing because the positive yshift pushes the element above the
timeline
   }%
```

Note the use of as is to prevent errors trying to capitalise \emph. place below has no effect here: the item still ends up above the timeline due to yshift=5pt. Note the use of only a year in

Element	Name	Description	Ti <i>k</i> Z Type
_	$\langle name \rangle$	Point on timeline at $\langle date \rangle$ .	coordinate
line	<u> </u>	Line from timeline to the edge of timeline border at $\langle date \rangle$ .	\path
chronos connector	chronos connector $\langle name  angle$	Connection point at end of line.	node
text tag	tag $\langle name \rangle$	Main box representing element. By default, con- tains the date above the capitalised $\langle name \rangle$ .	node
main connector	main connector $\langle name  angle$	Connection point at $TikZ$ anchor of text tag.	node
connection	-	Line between the chronos connector and main connector.	\draw
connectors	connector $\langle name \rangle n$	Secondary connection point(s) at TikZ anchor(s) of text tag, named in order with $n = 1, 2,$	node

Table 7: Components of an element of tag type event.

date. If you only specify years, you probably want to configure your timeline to avoid printing full dates or you will end up with everything happening on January  $1^{st}$ . See section 8.2.2.

 $\chronosperiod {\langle key-value list \rangle} macro$ 

Create an element of type period. This is intended for extended events spanning more than one day. The  $\langle key\text{-value list} \rangle$  should specify values for chronos keys and may include arbitrary TikZ keys. At a minimum, name and start must be specified for an ongoing period. If the extended event has ended, both start and end or dates should be given. If no end date is specified, chronos assumes the period is ongoing and uses the current date when placing the element on the timeline.

Table 5 summarises the chronos keys supported by elements of type period, with detailed usage information provided in sections 9.3 and 9.5.

Creating the element involves constructing, naming and connecting several components. These are described in table 6 for a typical case, but note that additional connectors require connectors to be set, the connection is drawn only if connect is true and some components may be rendered invisibly.

For example,

```
\chronosperiod {%
   dates={476-01-01}:{476-10-31},
   name=Fall of the\\Roman Empire,
   colour=blue,
   line+={draw=gray},% draw ugly grey border around line
}
```

This will construct an element analogous to the one created for Lamport. Note that the names of nodes and coordinates will be based on Fall of theRoman Empire because chronos will remove the \\ and the capitalisation won't change. colour Fall of theRoman Empire will be blue and the line representing the period on the timeline will be drawn in gray but potentially filled in blue. This is because line+ adds to any existing style rather than replacing it.

#### 9.1.2 Adding Other Connectable Elements

Of the remaining elements, only those of type theory are connectable. While they cannot be connected to the timeline<sup>31</sup>, chronos can create connectors for them to enable easy connections to other elements.

macro

 $^{31}\mathrm{At}$  least, chronos won't connect them for you.

theory

- 64 of 125 -

period

Element	Name	Description	Ti <i>k</i> Z Type
_	$\langle name \rangle$	Alias for text tag.	node
text tag	tag $\langle name \rangle$	Main box representing element. By default, contains the capitalised $\langle name \rangle$ .	node
main connector connectors	main connector $\langle name \rangle$ connector $\langle name \rangle n$	Connection point at TikZ anchor of text tag. Secondary connection point(s) at TikZ anchor(s) of text tag, named in order with $n = 1, 2,$	node node

Table 8: Compor	nents of an	element of	tag typ	e theory.
-----------------	-------------	------------	---------	-----------

Table 9: Components of an element of tag type theory circle.

Element	Name	Description	Ti <i>k</i> Z Type
_	$\langle name \rangle$	A (rectangular!) box containing all other components.	node
_	label above $\langle name  angle$	Label above the ring.	nodes
_	label below $\langle name  angle$	Label below the ring.	
_	$\langle name \rangle$ 1	Centre of the ring.	coordinate

Create an element of type theory. The  $\langle key$ -value list  $\rangle$  should specify values for chronos keys and may include arbitrary TikZ keys. At a minimum, name must be specified, but at is required for placement. If left unspecified, chronos will place the theory at chronos origin and issue a warning.

Table 5 summarises the chronos keys supported by elements of type theory, with detailed usage information provided in sections 9.3 and 9.5.

Creating the element involves constructing and naming components of up to two kinds. These are described in table 8 for a typical case, but note that a connector requires tag anchor or connectors to be set. Connectors may be rendered invisibly.

### 9.2 Adding Non-Connectable Elements

The remaining elements are non-connectable.

 $\chronostheorycircle \{\langle key-value \ list \rangle\}$ 

theory circle

Create a theory circle. The  $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$  should specify values for chronos keys and may include arbitrary TikZ keys. At a minimum, name must be specified, but at is required for placement.

Table 5 summarises the chronos keys supported by elements of type theory circle, with detailed usage information provided in sections 9.3 and 9.5.

Creating the element involves constructing and naming components of several kinds. Depending on the style, the element is intended to consist of a ring with text placed on the upper and lower semicircles and labels above and below. A symbol or picture can then be placed at the centre. The components are described in table 9 for a typical case, but note that these are style-dependant. In practice, this element could be used in other ways since it depends primarily on re-definable styles. However, in that case, there's no reason to avoid — and every reason to prefer — a new name.

For example,

```
\chronostheorycircle{
   name=gutenberg revolution,
   at=chronos end |- printing press.center,
   sizes=15pt:9pt,
   circle texts=Gutenberg:Revolution,
   labels=15\textsuperscript{th}c.\thinspace \celabel:21\textsuperscript{st}c.\
thinspace \celabel,
```

Element	Name	Description	Ti <i>k</i> Z Type
_	$\langle name \rangle$	Alias for text tag.	node
text tag	tag $\langle name \rangle$	Main box representing element. Empty by default.	node
caption	caption $\langle name \rangle$	By default, contains the capitalised $\langle name \rangle$ .	node

#### Table 10: Components of an element of tag type info.

#### Table 11: Components of an element of tag type main.

Element	Name	Description	Ti <i>k</i> Z Type
text tag	$\langle name \rangle$	By default, contains the capitalised $\langle name \rangle$ .	node

### }

#### 

macro

Create an element of type info i.e. an information box with a distinct caption. The  $\langle key-value list \rangle$  should specify values for chronos keys and may include arbitrary TikZ keys. At a minimum, name and at must be specified.

Table 5 summarises the chronos keys supported by elements of type info, with detailed usage information provided in sections 9.3 and 9.5.

Creating the element involves constructing and naming two components. These are described in table 10 for a typical case.

#### For example,

```
\chronosinfo{%
    name=syllogism,
    at=chronos year 200 |- u4,
    text content={All men are\\[-.25em]\hspace*{1.5em}mortal.\\Socrates is a\\[-.25em]
]\hspace*{1.5em}man.\\$\therefore$ Socrates is\\[-.25em]\hspace*{1.5em}mortal.},
    anchor=north,
    caption=A Syllogism,
    }
```

Note the use of caption to override the default reuse of name. This allows the box to be captioned 'A Syllogism', while allowing references simply to syllogism.

#### 

macro Create the main title. The  $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$  should specify values for chronos keys and may include arbitrary TikZ keys. At a minimum, name and at must be specified.

Table 5 summarises the chronos keys supported by elements of type main, with detailed usage information provided in sections 9.3 and 9.5.

The result is simply a TikZ node, as described in table 11.

## $\chronoscopyright {\langle key-value \ list \rangle} macro$

Create a copyleft or copyright notice. The  $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$  should specify values for chronos keys and may include arbitrary TikZ keys. At a minimum, at should be specified to avoid a warning.

Table 5 summarises the chronos keys supported by elements of type copyleft and copyright, with detailed usage information provided in sections 9.4 and 9.5.

The result is simply a TikZ node, as described in table 12.

macro

copyleft, copyright

 $copyleft, \ copyright$ 

- 66 of 125 -

info

main

Element	Name	Description	Ti <i>k</i> Z Type
text tag	$\langle name \rangle$	By default, contains a standard copyright or copyleft notice utilising whatever details are provided or default values and dummy texts.	node

Table 12: Components of an element of tag type copyleft and copyright.

Create a copyleft notice. Sets copyleft true before passing  $\{\langle key-value \ list \rangle\}$  to  $\chronoscopyright$ .

### 9.3 Additional Elements: Local Configuration

These keys are designed for use when creating specific elements. That is, they should be used in the argument of a chronos command such as \chronoslife, \chronosevent, \chronosperiod, \chronostheory, \chronosinfo, \chronostheorycircle, \chronosmaintitle, \chronoscopyleft or \chronoscopyright. If used globally (e.g. in \chronosset or the (*chronos preamble*)), they will determine defaults for all elements (belonging to the relevant tag). Where this makes sense, the possibility is noted below; where it is not noted, global usage is unsupported.

 $name = \langle text \rangle$  key = -

life, event, period, theory, info, theory circle, main, copyleft, copyright

The base name of the element. Except for \chronosmaintitle, \chronoscopyleft and \chronoscopyright, this key is required.

Default: main title (main)

Default: copyleft and copyright (copyleft and copyright)

By default,  $\langle text \rangle$  is used multiple times.

First, it is capitalised and used for (part of) the content created for the element added to the timeline. as is prevents capitalisation. In the case of life, event and period, it is used for the non-date part of the content. In the case of theory and main, it is used for the whole content of the title. In the case of info, it is used to create the caption. In the case of copyleft and copyright, it is used as the author's name if author is unset. It is not used to create content in the case of theory circle.

Second, it is processed to create multiple names for different parts of the element e.g. names for connectorss, text tags etc. Processing attempts to remove some things which would be problematic when used as part of the names for coordinates and nodes, but markup can still cause problems. In this case, use name content or text content for the marked-up version and give  $\langle name \rangle$  a suitably simplified version.

#### as is = true|false boolean key

life, event, period, theory

Whether to skip capitalisation of name if using it in the textual content of the element. If true, the name will *not* be capitalised; if false, it will be. Capitalisation is never used when setting the names of coordinates, nodes etc.

Default: false

 $\begin{array}{l} \texttt{at} = \langle coordinate \rangle \\ key \end{array}$ 

life, event, period, theory, info, theory circle, main, copyleft, copyright

Where to place the element. This key is mandatory for theory circle, info, main, copyleft and copyright.

For life, event, period and theory, the key is optional. By default, the text tag will be placed at  $\langle name \rangle$ , which is a point on the timeline calculated according to date, offset vertically by either yshift or text tag yshift. Since theory text tags do not have dates, they are placed at the (chronos origin) and a warning is issued.

Example:  $at=\langle name \rangle$  |- level -2

This will align  $\langle name \rangle$  horizontally with its placement point on the timeline and vertically with level -2, assuming at least two levels exist below the timeline. See section 8.6.

```
at aux = \langle text \rangle
      key
```

life. period

A wrapper around **at** which appends a space followed by the sanitised name of the current element to  $\langle text \rangle$  before passing the result to the key.

At present, the only values of = $\langle text \rangle$  which make sense are birth or death (for life) and start or end (for period). These options allow the text tag to be placed relative to the end points of the line, rather than at its centre.

This key is intended for use with off line styles, especially those utilising line add yshift.

tag anchor =  $\langle node anchor \rangle$ key

life, event, period, theory, info, main, copyleft, copyright

The PGF/TikZ anchor to use for the element's main connector. This is the point chronos uses to connect life, event and period text tags to the timeline. By default, this anchor is also used when placing the text tag. That is, tag anchor is used as the TikZ anchor. If you want different anchors to be used for the connection point and for placement, you can use both keys.

```
\chronoslife{%
  name=friedrich gottlob koenig,
  dates={1774-04-17}:{1833-01-17},
  at=friedrich gottlob koenig |- i1.north,
  tag anchor=east,
  anchor=north east,
  xshift=-5pt,
}
```

Default[for elements below the timeline]north Default[for elements above the timeline]south These defaults may be overridden on a per-tag basis by setting the key globally. For example,

```
\begin{chronos}[%
   life/tag anchor=50,
   event/tag anchor=north east,
   period/tag anchor=south,
 ]
\end{chronos}
```

 $colour = \langle colour name \rangle$ 

life, event, period, theory, info

color colour key The colour to assign to the element. The effect depends on the type of element being created and other settings. To modify the default colours, see sections 8.8 and 9.5.

connect = true|false boolean key

Whether to connect the element to the timeline.

Default: true

connectors =  $\langle list of node anchors \rangle$ 

life, event, period, theory

life. event. period

connectors+

connectors' Connection points to create on the element's text tag. Applies to life, event, period and theory. key connectors and connectors+ add to the existing list (if any). connectors' replaces it.

Default: empty

```
connectors={north,south,east,west},
connectors'={north},
connectors+={south},
connectors={east},
```

This code would result in connection points at the node's north, south and east anchors.

Note that one connection point is always created if the **element** is of a kind which could be connected to the timeline.

 $\begin{array}{c} \texttt{default colour Use the default colour assigned to elements of this tag type. life, event, period, theory, info, main \\ \texttt{default color}_{key} \\ \textit{This key does something quite different if used in a global configuration context. See section 9.5 \\ and section 8.8 for details. For example, \end{array}$ 

```
\begin{chronos}
 Ε
   life/colour rotation=true,
   life/default colour=gray,
 ٦
  \chronoslife{% use colour from life's colours above colour list
   name=chris,
   dates={1038-01-10}:{1066:11-19},
   at=u2 -| chris,
 7
 \chronoslife{% use gray
   name=sandv.
   dates={1345-11-23}:{1378-12-24},
   at=u3 -| sandy,
   default colour,
 }
 \chronoslife{% use blue
   name=alex,
   dates={1246-09-22}:{1295-02-07},
   at=u5 -| alex,
   colour=blue,
 }
  \chronoslife{% use colour from life's colours below colour list
   name=hilary,
   dates={1156-06-12}:{1201-04-01},
    at=i4 -| hilary,
 }
\end{chronos}
```

Note the lack of an argument when used locally.

Note that there is no reason to use this key unless you wish to override colour rotation for a particular element. It suffices not to specify a colour.

# place below = true|false boolean key

life, event, period, theory

By default, **chronos** alternates putting elements of a particular type above and below the timeline, but you may wish to put everything above or below, all elements of particular type above or below. Furthermore, you may wish to override the default for particular elements. Densely-packed timelines, especially, can require considerable intervention in order to make best use of the space while arranging things in a clear and (hopefully) visually appealing way.

```
\chronosevent {%
   name=red letter day,
   date=1750,
   place below=false,
}
```

Default: true

Initially: dependent on other options

life, event, period, theory

Thus the previous code could be rewritten as

- 69 of 125 -

```
\chronosevent {%
 name=red letter day,
  date=1750,
  place above,
}
```

line add yshift = { $\langle dimension \rangle$ }

line add yshift+

event year on

life, period

line add yshift' Additional vertical displacement of lines from the timeline. This is added to the default vertical line add yshift- displacement. dimension key

Cf. line yshift.

**\lineyshift** The line yshift. This macro is available only within the  $\langle timeline specification \rangle$ .

```
macro
  dates = {\langle birth date \rangle}:{\langle death date \rangle}
date \ key
```

```
={\langle start date \rangle}:{\langle end date \rangle}
```

life

period

Dates of a life or period, specified as explained in section 8.2. The second date may be empty for a living person or ongoing occurrence. This key offers a more compact syntax as an alternative to the keys birth and death or start and end explained below. That is

dates={1310-02-03}:{1350-06-07},

is equivalent to

```
birth={1310-02-03},
death={1350-06-07},
```

for life or

start={1310-02-03}, end={1350-06-07},

for period.

By default, these dates are used for both placement on the timeline and the date content of the element's text tag, but see dates content.

date keu	= { $\langle birth \ date \rangle$ }	life
	The date of birth for a life, specified as explained in section $8.2$ . See dates above.	
date ken	= { $\langle death \ date \rangle$ }	life
	The date of death for a life, specified as explained in section 8.2. See dates above.	
date keu	= { $\langle start \ date \rangle$ }	period
	The start date of a period, specified as explained in section 8.2. See dates above.	
	= { $\langle end \ date \rangle$ }	period
$date \ key$	The end date of a period, specified as explained in section 8.2. See dates above.	
$date \ key$	= $\{\langle date \rangle\}$	event
	The date of an event, specified as explained in section 8.2. By default, the date is used for both placement on the timeline and the date content of the element's text tag, but see dates content.	
-	Don't put this particular event's year on the timeline.	event
key	This can be used if the line would otherwise become too crowded when using event line. Cf. special date. See section 8.4.3. Figure 20 illustrates the effect of using the effect of using the section of	-

special date	= $\{\langle text \rangle\}$
key	Use $\langle text \rangle$ rather than the date for a particular event when using event years on line. Cf. event year on line skip. See section 8.4.3. Figure 20 illustrates the effect of using this key.
dates content	= $\{\langle text \rangle\}$ life, event, period
key	Override the use of specified dates when creating content for the element's text tag. This is intended for 'special' cases e.g. uncertain, approximate or non-standardly specified dates. By default, the value is derived from dates or date.
	Example: dates content={c600-1450\celabel}
name content	= $\{\langle text \rangle\}$ life, event, period, theory, info, main
key	Override the use of the element's name when creating content for the element's text tag. This might be necessary if special markup is required. For example,
	name content=\LaTeX3 Hummingbird,
	It may also be desirable where longer content would render reuse of a <b>name</b> unwieldy.
text content	= $\{\langle text \rangle\}$ life, event, period, theory, info
key	Override the use of both element's name and dates when creating content for the element's text tag.
	<pre>name=block printing, text content={Block printing, originally used to print pictures and text onto cloth, developed into a method of printing books on paper.},</pre>

phantom = true|false boolean key

life, event, period

Create a 'phantom' element. Phantoms have assigned colours, require names and potentially feature lines, but they do not have text tags or connections. Note that these componentss are not invisible; they are not constructed at all.

Default: true

Initially: false

Example:  $\chronosperiod{ame=c17, dates=1600:1699, colour=cyan, phantom}$ 

This key may be used globally to set a different tag-specific default.

```
\begin{chronos}[%
   period/phantom,% make periods are phantoms by default
   event/phantom=true,% make events are phantoms by default
   life/phantom=false,% make lives non-phantoms by default (this matches the package
default)
 ]
\end{chronos}
```

For example, this key may be used to colour stretches of time without visibly labelling them, in conjunction with non-phantom lifes or  $events^{32}$ .

\begin{chronos}[% https://tex.stackexchange.com/a/701743/ . . . period={% phantom, colours below={orange,cyan,green,green}, },

 $^{32}\textsc{Based}$  on my answer at TeX StackExchange: 701743.

1 % these \*\*must\*\* be named, even though they invisible, detached phantoms \chronosperiod{dates=2018:2019,name={n1}} \chronosperiod{dates=2019:2022,name={n2}} \chronosperiod{dates=2022:2023,name={n3}} \chronosperiod{dates=2023:2024,name={n4}} . . .  $\end{chronos}$ caption =  $\{\langle text \rangle\}$ info*key* The caption for an **element** of type **info**.  $labels = \{ \langle upper \ label \rangle \} : \{ \langle lower \ label \rangle \}$ theory circle keyLabels to be placed above and below a theory circle. circle texts = { $\langle upper text \rangle$ }:{ $\langle lower text \rangle$ } theory circle keyThe text to place in the upper and lower parts of a theory circle. By default, this uses text effects along path, so the content must be consistent with the restrictions imposed by use of this TikZ decoration. sizes = (outer circle dimension): (inner circle dimension) theory circle dimension key The sizes of the inner and outer circles used to create a theory circle. Default: 15pt:9pt The difference between the two dimensions gives the thickness of the ring around which text is

placed; the size of the inner circle gives the dimension of the hole in which a symbol or similar may be placed. This key may be used globally to set defaults.

```
\begin{chronos}[%
    theory/circles/sizes'+=10pt:5pt,
]
\end{chronos}
```

## 9.4 Additional Elements: Local/Global Configuration

Although you will generally want to use the following keys in the  $\langle chronos \ preamble \rangle$  or in  $\chronosset$ , they can also be used to influence the format of a particular element.

event

```
(tag)/date format = {{ date format specification}}
date format key ______
```

Use  $\langle date \text{ format specification} \rangle$  to format date.

\chronosevent{%
 ...,
 date format={!a, !d !b},% show short day of week, day of month and short month
}
\end{chronos}

See section 8.2 for details and defaults.

 $\langle tag \rangle / date \text{ formats} = \{ \langle date \text{ format spec.} \rangle \} : \{ \langle date \text{ format spec.} \rangle \} : \{ \langle date \text{ format spec.} \rangle \}$  life, period date format key Use  $\langle date \text{ format spec.} \rangle$ s to format date range.

\chronosevent{%

. . . .

date formats={!d}:{!d !B},% show day of month for start/birth date and day of month
and month name for end/death date
}
\end{chronos}

See section 8.2 for details and defaults.

```
      full dates
      life, event, period

      <tag>/full dates
      ...,

      full dates,
      ...,

      }
      ...,
```

\end{chronos}

See section 8.2 for details and defaults.

only years Show only years.

life, event, period

```
\langle tag \rangle/only years
```

```
ars
key \chronoslife{%
...,
only years,% use only years in all dates
event/full dates,% override to use full dates for events
}
\end{chronos}
```

See section 8.2 for details and defaults.

show eras Show eras.  $\langle tag \rangle$ /show eras  $key \searrow key$ 

\chronoslife{%
...,
show eras,% show eras in all text tags
}
\end{chronos}

See section 8.2 for details and defaults.

life, event, period

life, event, period

without eras Omit eras.

...,
without eras,% omit eras in all text tags
life/show eras,% override to show eras in life text tags
}
\end{chronos}

See section 8.2 for details and defaults.

```
only text Omit all date information.
```

 $\langle tag \rangle$ /only text

life, event, period

key Default: disabled

```
\chronoslife{%
    ...,
    only text,% omit all dates from all tags
}
\end{chronos}
```

The following six sets of keys all work in the same way<sup>33</sup>. If used when creating a specific element, they affect that element. If set in the  $\langle chronos \ preamble \rangle$  or  $\langle chronosset \ with a tag \ prefix, they$ set the tag-specific setting and will affect all elements belonging to that tag unless overridden locally.

Note these keys require a tag prefix if used in a global context, such as the (chronos preamble). They do not need a prefix if used when creating a particular element. For example,

```
\begin{chronos}
 Ε
    event/line+={semithick},% prefix required ; event/ explicit
 ٦
  \chronosevent{%
   name=dydd dewi sant,
   date={1982-03-01},
   line+={double},% no prefix ; event/ implicit
 }
\end{chronos}
```

life, event, period, theory

```
\langle tag \rangle/connection+
```

 $\langle tag \rangle$ /connection = { $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$ }

 $\langle tag \rangle$  connection  $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$  to apply to this element's connection. This affects the line drawn between the key element's connector on the timeline and the text tag's main connector. This is intended for arbitrary TikZ keys; it should not be used for chronos keys as they may not be processed correctly.  $\langle tag \rangle$ /connection and  $\langle tag \rangle$ /connection' replace any current list;  $\langle tag \rangle$ /connection+ adds to it.

```
\langle tag \rangle/line = {\langle kev-value \ list \rangle}
```

life, event, period

life, period

life, event, period, theory, info

- $\langle tag \rangle / line +$  $\frac{\partial ag}{\partial ag}$  to apply to this element's line on or parallel to the timeline. This is the line key representing the temporal extension of a life or period. This is intended for arbitrary TikZ keys; it should *not* be used for chronos keys as they may not be processed correctly.  $\langle tag \rangle$ /line and  $\langle tag \rangle$ /line' replace any current list;  $\langle tag \rangle$ /line+ adds to it.
  - Default: fill=##1,fill opacity=.25,draw=none (on line, life/period)

```
Default: draw=##1,fill=none,opacity=.25 (on line, event)
```

```
Default: draw=##1,thick,fill opacity=.75 (off line, life/period)
```

```
Default: draw=##1,draw opacity=.75,fill=none (off line, event)
```

line yshift = { $\langle dimension \rangle$ }

line yshift+

line yshift' Default vertical displacement of lines from the timeline. Whether the displacement is reckoned line yshift- from the centre or border of the timeline depends on the default placement. dimension key

Cf. line add yshift.

\lineyshift The line yshift. This macro is available only within the  $\langle timeline specification \rangle$ .

```
macro
\langle tag \rangle/text tag = {\langle key-value \ list \rangle}
```

 $\langle tag \rangle$ /text tag+  $\langle tag \rangle$ /text tag'

 $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$  to apply to this element's text tag. This is intended for arbitrary TikZ keys; it  $k_{ey}$  should not be used for chronos keys as they may not be processed correctly.  $\langle tag \rangle$ /text tag and  $\langle tag \rangle$ /text tag' replace any current list;  $\langle tag \rangle$ /text tag+ adds to it.

\chronosset{%

```
life/text tag+={font=\scshape\small},
event/text tag+={font=\scshape\footnotesize},
period/text tag+={font=\itshape\footnotesize},
```

 $<sup>\</sup>overline{}^{33}$ There is a seventh set,  $\langle tag \rangle/tag$ ,  $\langle tag \rangle/tag+$  and  $\langle tag \rangle/tag'$ , which may be of interest to advanced users. These keys are also potentially destructive. Not only  $\langle tag \rangle/tag'$ , but also  $\langle tag \rangle/tag$  and even  $\langle tag \rangle/tag+$ , can overwrite default settings for such things as colour rotation.

	}
	See also $\langle tag \rangle$ /date font and $\langle tag \rangle$ /text font.
$\langle tag \rangle$ /chronos connector $\langle tag \rangle$ /chronos connector+ $\langle tag \rangle$ /chronos connector' key	= {{key-value list}} life, event, period
	Specify TikZ settings to be used when creating chronos connectors on the timeline. Note that $\langle tag \rangle$ /chronos connector adds options to the current list. If, for some reason, you want to override this, you must do so explicitly. In general, it does <i>not</i> make sense to change this base option, so consider carefully whether you wish to do so.
	Default: anchor=center,inner sep=0pt,outer sep=0pt
$\langle tag \rangle$ /text tag connector	
$\langle tag \rangle$ /text tag connector+ $\langle tag \rangle$ /text tag connector' key	Specify TikZ settings to be used when creating text tag connectors on the timeline. Note that $\frac{1}{10000000000000000000000000000000000$
	Default: anchor=center,inner sep=0pt,outer sep=0pt
$\langle tag  angle$ /main text tag	= {\key-value list\} life, event, period, theory
$\langle tag  angle$ /main text tag connector'	Specify additional TikZ settings to be used when creating the main connectors on text tags. $\langle tag \rangle$ /main text tag connector and $\langle tag \rangle$ /main text tag connector' replace any current list; $\langle tag \rangle$ /main text tag connector+ adds to it. The 'main' connector is the one which connects (or would connect) the text tag to the timeline. These keys are rarely needed because, usually, you want all the text tag connectors to look the same. Only use one of these three keys rather than one from the previous set if you don't want $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$ to apply to all of them. You do not need to duplicate settings here.
	Note that $\langle tag \rangle$ /main text tag connector <i>adds</i> options to the current list. If, for some reason, you want to override this, you must do so explicitly. In general, it does <i>not</i> make sense to change this base option, so consider carefully whether you wish to do so.
	Default: anchor=center,inner sep=0pt,outer sep=0pt
( 3)	= {\key-value list\} info, theory circle
$\langle tag  angle / label' \ \langle tag  angle / label+ \ key$	Style to apply to the caption of an element of tag type info or the labels of an element of type theory circle. In the latter case, the style applies to both the upper and lower label.
	Default: empty
	label and label' replace the current list; label+ replaces it.
	= {{key-value list}} main
$\langle tag  angle /  title' \ \langle tag  angle /  title+$	Style to apply to the main title, an element of tag type main.
key	Default: empty
	<pre>main/title and main/title' replace the current list; main/title+ replaces it.</pre>
	Place main title between two parallel lines aligned to the width of the text. main
style	This style is available when creating a text tag of type main and draws lines along the northern and southern sides of the node. It is used in somewhat plain and date centric.
$\langle tag \rangle$ /author	= $\{\langle text \rangle\}$ copyleft, copyright
key	The author's name for a copyleft or copyright notice. This is used only if name content is unset.
	Default: Author (as a last resort)
	If author and name content are unset, chronos first tries to figure out a suitable au- thor. If name is set, a capitalised version is used. Otherwise, if \svnauthor is defined,

- 75 of 125 -

 $\svnFullAuthor{(\svnauthor)} is used, if \svnFullAuthor is available, or \svnauthor, if it is not. If chronos still hasn't found an author, Author is used.$ 

 $\langle tag \rangle$ /copyleft = true|false

key

 $copyleft, \ copyright$ 

boolean key

Whether a copyleft or copyright notice should specify copyleft or copyright.

Default: false (\chronoscopyright)

Default: true (\chronoscopyleft)

 $\chronoscopyright$  respects the global default, so if you set  $\langle tag \rangle / copyleft$  true with  $\chronosset$ , both macros will make copyleft notices unless overridden in the  $\langle key-value\ list \rangle$  of options they absorb when executed.  $\chronoscopyleft$  always creates a copyleft notice, regardless of any global settings, unless copyleft is explicitly set false when invoked.

```
\langle tag \rangle/notice = {\langle macro \ definition \rangle}
```

 $copyleft, \ copyright$ 

copyleft, copyright

copyleft, copyright

life, event, period

Template for a **copyleft** or **copyright** notice. It is used as the definition of the macro used for the content of the notice and should absorb two arguments: year and author.

```
Default: {Copyleft \textcopyleft{} #1 #2} (if \langle tag \rangle/copyleft is true)
```

Default: {Copyright \textcopyright{} #1 #2} (if  $\langle tag \rangle$ /copyleft is false)

For example,

\begin{chronos}
 [
 copyright/notice={Created by #2 in the year #1 of the Great Debacle at the behest of
 His Gracious Grasp Full Acre Fanfare the Nineteenth.},
 ]

 $\langle tag \rangle$ /rotate =  $\langle angle \rangle$ 

The angle to rotate the node containing a **copyleft** or **copyright** notice.

Default: 90

 $\langle tag \rangle$ /year =  $\langle text \rangle$ 

The year of publication for a copyleft or copyright notice.

Default: \svnyear (if available)

Default: \today (otherwise)

#### 9.4.1 Specialist Fonts for Text Tags

 $\langle tag \rangle$ /date font = { $\langle font \ commands \rangle$ } key

Set font macros to be applied to the date content of text tags.

Default:

```
\chronosset{%
    ...
    event/date font=\itshape\bfseries\small,
    life/date font=\sffamily\large,
    period/date font=\upshape\normalsize\mdseries,
}
```

Note that if you want to alter the font for the entire contents of the text tag, it is better to just use  $\langle tag \rangle$ /text tag+=font={ $\langle \rangle$ }. Use date font to modify those settings specifically for date(s). Note that if era label are included, they will not be affected.

 $\langle tag \rangle$ /text font = { $\langle font \ commands \rangle$ } key

life, event, period

Set font macros to be applied to the text content of text tags.

Default:

```
\chronosset{%
    ...
    event/text font=\uishape\large,
    life/text font=\sffamily\Large,
    period/text font=\small\bfseries,
}
```

Note that if you want to alter the font for the entire contents of the text tag, it is better to just use  $\langle tag \rangle$ /text tag+=font={ $\langle \rangle$ }. Use text font to modify those settings specifically for names.

### 9.5 Additional Elements: Global Configuration

*Except where otherwise noted, the keys in this section should not be used locally.* The following keys are intended for use in the *(chronos preamble)* or in *\chronosset.* They are not intended for use when creating particular elements. For example, default colour should *not* be used for particular elements, unless you wish to *use* the existing default, as opposed to setting it. Instead, use colour to override default settings.

See section 8.8 for further information about colour keys and colour list keys.

```
life = {\langle key-value \ list \rangle}
 event
        Equivalent to prefixing each item in \langle key-value \ list \rangle with \langle tag \rangle.
period
theory
        \begin{chronos}
    key
          Ε
             life={%
               full dates,
               without eras,
               text tag+={font=\sffamily},
               text font=\bfseries,
               date font=\small,
               colours above={red,orange,blue},
               colours below={darkgray,gray,black,magenta},
             }.
             period={%
               only years,
               text tag+={opacity=.75},
             },
             event={%
               text tag+={double=blue},
             }
          ٦
         \<mark>end</mark>{chronos}
```

 $\langle tag \rangle$ /default colour =  $\langle colour name \rangle$ 

 $\langle tag \rangle$ /default color colour key life, event, period, theory, info

The default colour to use for all elements of type  $\langle tag \rangle$ , as explained in section 8.8. This key does something quite different if used when creating a specific element. See section 9.3 for details. For example,

\begin{chronos}[
 life/default colour=blue,
 event/default colour=green,
 period/default colour=red,
]
\end{chronos}

life, event, period, theory

See section 8.8 for details and defaults. colours above = { $\langle colour \ list \rangle$ } life, event, period, theory colors above The default and tag-specific colour lists for all susceptible elements above the timeline. These keys  $\langle tag \rangle$ /colours above  $\langle tag \rangle / colors$  above should never be used when creating specific elements.  $colour \ list \ key$ \begin{chronos}[ colours above={gray,blue,green}, life/colours above={magenta,pink,purple}, ٦  $\end{chronos}$ See section 8.8 for details and defaults. colours below = { $\langle colour \ list \rangle$ } life, event, period, theory colors below The default and tag-specific colour lists for all susceptible elements below the timeline. These keys  $\langle tag \rangle$ /colours below  $\langle tag \rangle / colors below should never be used when creating specific elements.$ colour list key \begin{chronos}[ colours below={red,orange,magenta}, theory/colours below={black,gray}, ٦  $\end{chronos}$ See section 8.8 for details and defaults. colour rotation = true | false life, event, period, theory color rotation Whether colour rotation is enabled by default.  $\langle tag \rangle$ /colour rotation  $\langle tag \rangle$ /color rotation Default: true boolean key \begin{chronos}[ colour rotation=false, ٦  $\end{chronos}$ See section 8.8 for details and defaults.  $copyleft = \{\langle key-value \ list \rangle\}$ copyleft, copyright copyleft' copyleft+ Style to apply to the copyleft or copyright, an element of tag type copyleft / copyright. copyright Default: empty copyright' copyright+ copyleft, copyleft', copyright and copyright' replace the current list; copyleft+ and key copyright+ replace it. event dates split = true | false event  $boolean\ key$ Create two text tags for each event, one above and one below the timeline. The formatted date or dates content goes into one and the formatted name or name content goes into the other. This key has no effect on text tags belonging to other tags, such as life or period. Default: true Initially: false event date split Additional style applied to text tags of type event if event dates split is true. eventstyleThis style is provided primarily for use *outside* the chronos environment, in case you want some timelines with split events and some without. It is not intended to support both split and unsplit events on the same timeline. Default: empty

The next twelve sets of keys fall into two groups, corresponding to the five sets of corresponding keys explained in section 9.4. None of these keys should be used when creating specific elements.

The first set of six consists of plural forms, as opposed to the singular forms used for tag-specific configuration. These are available in the  $\langle chronos \ preamble \rangle$  and  $\backslash chronosset$ .

```
text tags = {\langle key-value \ list \rangle}
```

life, event, period, theory, info

text tags text tags Set or modify the global default  $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$  to be applied to text tags in the absence of a  $\tilde{k}_{key}$  tag-specific setting (section 9.4). text tags and text tags' replace the current value; text tags+ replaces it.

```
Default: outer sep=0pt,text=#1!75!black
```

The key are passed a single argument specifying the current element's assigned colour, which may be used in the usual way i.e. by writing #1 everywhere you would like the colour to be used.

Note that, when checking if a more fine-grained value is set, the lists of  $\langle key-value \rangle$  pairs are regarded as a whole. They are not treated on a  $\langle key \rangle$ -by- $\langle key \rangle$  basis. So if you write

```
\begin{chronos}
  Ε
    event/text tag={},
    text tags+={fill=green},
 1
\end{chronos}
```

you will not get green text tags for events. Nor will you get the package option default. Instead, no style whatsoever will be applied when creating event text tags.

```
connections = {\langle key-value \ list \rangle}
```

connections. Set or modify the global default  $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$  to be applied to connections in the absence of connections+ key a tag-specific setting (section 9.4). connections and connections' replace the current value; connections+ replaces it.

Default: draw=#1

These keys are related to the tag-specific  $\langle tag \rangle$ /connection,  $\langle tag \rangle$ /connection+ and  $\langle tag \rangle$ /connection' in just the same way as text tags, text tags+ and text tags' are related to  $\langle tag \rangle$ /text tag,  $\langle tag \rangle$ /text tag+ and  $\langle tag \rangle$ /text tag'. Please see above for details.

```
lines = {\langle key-value \ list \rangle}
```

lines<sup>+</sup> Set or modify the global default  $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$  to be applied to lines in the absence of a tag-specific key setting (section 9.4). lines and lines' replace the current value; lines+ replaces it.

Default: none (see section 9.4 for tag-specific defaults.)

These keys are related to the tag-specific  $\langle tag \rangle$ /line,  $\langle tag \rangle$ /line+ and  $\langle tag \rangle$ /line' in just the same way as text tags, text tags+ and text tags' are related to  $\langle tag \rangle$ /text tag,  $\langle tag \rangle$ /text tag+ and  $\langle tag \rangle$ /text tag'. Please see above for details.

chronos connectors = { $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$ }

chronos connectors+

life, event, period, theory

life, event, period

life, event, period, theory

chronos connectors. Set or modify the global default  $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$  to be applied to chronos connectors in the absence key of a tag-specific setting (section 9.4). chronos connectors' replaces the current value; chronos connectors and chronos connectors+ replace it.

Default: anchor=center, inner sep=0pt, outer sep=0pt

These keys are related to the tag-specific  $\langle tag \rangle$ /chronos connector,  $\langle tag \rangle$ /chronos connector+ and  $\langle tag \rangle$ /chronos connector' in just the same way as text tags, text tags+ and text tags' are related to  $\langle tag \rangle$ /text tag,  $\langle tag \rangle$ /text tag+ and  $\langle tag \rangle$ /text tag'. Please see above for details.

	- {/lrow webus list}	
text tag connectors+ text tag connectors'	$= \{\langle key-value \ list \rangle\}$	life, event, period, theory
	Set or modify the global default $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$ to be applied to tex of a tag-specific setting (section 9.4). text tag connectors' rep tag connectors and text tag connectors+ replace it.	t tag connectors in the absence places the current value; text
	Default: anchor=center,inner sep=0pt,outer sep=0pt	
	These keys are related to the tag-specific $\langle tag \rangle$ /text tag connecto and $\langle tag \rangle$ /text tag connector' in just the same way as text tags' are related to $\langle tag \rangle$ /text tag, $\langle tag \rangle$ /text tag+ and $\langle tag \rangle$ for details.	tags, text tags+ and text
main text tag connectors	= { $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$ }	life, event, period, theory
<pre>main text tag connectors+ main text tag connectors'</pre>	Set or modify the global default $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$ to be applied to absence of a tag-specific setting (section 9.4). main text tag convalue; main text tag connectors and main text tag connect	nectors' replaces the current
	Default: empty	
	These keys are related to the tag-specific $\langle tag \rangle$ /main text tag tag connector+ and $\langle tag \rangle$ /main text tag connector' in just text tags+ and text tags' are related to $\langle tag \rangle$ /text tag, $\langle tag$ tag'. Please see above for details.	the same way as text tags,
	The next six sets of keys are convenience keys which set or modi corresponding keys for all tags at once.	fy the global defaults and the
	= { $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$ }	life, event, period, theory, info
	A convenience key equivalent to setting the same $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$ fo tag, event/text tag, period/text tag, theory/text tag and variants. This key should never be used when creating a specific above for details and defaults.	<pre>info/text tag or the + or '</pre>
	= { $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$ }	life, event, period, theory
	A convenience key equivalent to setting the same (key-value life/connection, event/connection, period/connection and or ' variants. This key should never be used when creating a specific above for details and defaults.	theory/connection or the +
every lines	= { $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$ }	life, event, period
every lines+ every lines' key	A convenience key equivalent to setting the same $\langle key-value \ list event/line and period/line or the + or ' variants. This key show a specific element. See section 9.4 and above for details and defau$	uld never be used when creating
every chronos connectors	= { $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$ }	life, event, period, theory
every chronos connectors+ every chronos connectors' key	A convenience key equivalent to setting $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$ for life/chronos connector, event/chronos connector, period/c connector or the + or ' variants. This key should never be used w See section 9.4 and above for details and defaults.	chronos connector and theory/chron
every text tag connectors		life, event, period, theory
	A convenience key equivalent to setting the same $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$ for life/text tag connector, event/text tag connector, period theory/text tag connector or the + or ' variants. This key show a specific element. See section 9.4 and above for details and defau	od/text tag connector and uld never be used when creating
every main text tag connectors every main text tag connectors+	= $\{\langle key-value \ list \rangle\}$	life, event, period, theory
every main text tag connectors' key	— 80 of 125 —	

A convenience key equivalent to setting the same  $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$  for all of main text tag connectors, life/main text tag connector, event/main text tag connector, period/main text tag connector and theory/main text tag connector or the + or ' variants. This key should never be used when creating a specific element. See section 9.4 and above for details and defaults.

every theory circle circle every theory circle circle' every theory circle circle+ key	= $\{\langle key-value \ list \rangle\}$	theory circle
	Configuration of the base ring for elements of tag type theory circles with the smaller forming a hole in the centre by default rule will eliminate the hole.	
	Default: fill=(chronos main colour), draw=(chronos main colour)	lour angle, even odd rule
	every theory circle circle and every theory circle cirle is $list$ ; every theory circle circle' replaces it.	$\texttt{rcle+} \text{ add to the current } \langle \textit{key-value}$
every theory circle text	= $\{\langle key-value \ list \rangle\}$	theory circle
every theory circle text' every theory circle text+ key	Style applied to the texts used in constructing elements of tag texts are placed along the semicircular paths corresponding to tring formed by the theory circle circles. This means the colour used to fill the circles, given the default styles.	the upper and lower halves of the
	Default: decoration={text effects along path, text={## to path, text=chronos@prifliw@cefndir, characters={te decorate	
	every theory circle text and every theory circle text $list$ ; every theory circle text' replaces it.	:+ add to the current $\langle key-value$
text tag yshift	= $\langle dimension \rangle$	life, event, period, theory
dimension key	The yshift to apply when placing the text tag if yshift is ot should probably never use this key in the context of a particula just as well and will probably be more reliable and certainly i which can be used to adjust a position set with at, text tag ys tag yshift is ignored. It makes sense to set this globally if you belonging to a particular tag to be shifted by some specified example,	ar element, because yshift works faster. Moreover, unlike yshift, shift cannot. If at is used, text a want all elements or all elements
	<pre>\begin{chronos}[     life/text tag yshift=10pt,     event/text tag yshift=30pt,     period/text tag yshift=50pt,     theory/text tag yshift=70pt, ] \end{chronos}</pre>	



#### Theory

The following keys take the form  $\{\text{every}\} \langle tag \rangle$ , optionally followed by prime or plus. They should not be used to configure elements for which other global keys exist, such as colours, connections, connectors, date formats, lines or text tags. Generally, these keys should be unnecessary and are best avoided, although they may occasionally be convenient.

every life'
every life'
key life/tag+ and life/tag', but should never be used when creating a specific element. every
life and every life+ add to the current (key-value list); every life' replaces it.

```
every event = \{\langle key-value \ list \rangle\}
```

every life = { $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$ }

every event' every event' key event/tag+ and event/tag', but should *never* be used when creating a specific element. every event and every event+ add to the current (key-value list); every event' replaces it.

every period =  $\{\langle key-value \ list \rangle\}$ 

every theory =  $\{\langle key-value \ list \rangle\}$ 

every theory' every theory+ key Additional configuration for all elements of tag type theory. These do much the same as theory/tag, theory/tag+ and theory/tag', but should *never* be used when creating a specific element. every theory and every theory+ add to the current (key-value list); every theory' replaces it.

every info = { $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$ }

every info'
every info'
key info/tag+ and info/tag', but should never be used when creating a specific element. every
info and every info+ add to the current (key-value list); every info' replaces it.

## 9.6 Adding Connections, Using Colours and Accessing Styles

To access the colour list used for the timeline etc., see sections 8.3 and 8.4.5. For details of the way colour list are assigned to elements, see section 8.8.

Life, event, period and theory elements are designed to be connected not only, in the case of those which are connectable, to the timeline, but also to each other. To ensure consistent styling, this requires the use of chronos styles in TikZ commands.

$$-82 \, of \, 125 -$$

period

event

life

theory

info

In addition, densely-packed timelines sometimes require non-standard paths be used to connect a minority of elements to the timeline in an efficient way. Again, this requires access to chronos styles.

chronos connect style	= $\{\langle tag \rangle\}: \{\langle element \ name \rangle\}$	life, event, period, theory
	This sets the style used for connections belonging to elements assigned to $\langle element name \rangle$ (section 8.8). For example,	of type $\langle tag \rangle$ with the colour
	<pre>\draw [chronos connect=life:johannes gutenberg] (connector j connector printing press) (connector johannes gutenberg2) -  connector johannes gutenberg3) ++(5pt,0pt)  -  (connector</pre>	- (connector movable type) (
	This will draw a line using the style for connections of tag type life element named johannes gutenberg. Note the use of connectors tag and on other elements' text tags. In this case, tag johannes to tag printing press, tag movable type and tag gutenber	on both the element's own text gutenberg is being connected
	The following four keys provide analogous access to the styles a connectors, text tag connectors, lines and text tags and are used in	
	= $\{\langle tag \rangle\}: \{\langle element \ name \rangle\}$	life, event, period
0	This sets the style used for chronos connectors belonging to element assigned to $\langle element name \rangle$ .	tts of type $\langle tag \rangle$ with the colour
	= $\{\langle tag \rangle\}: \{\langle element \ name \rangle\}$	life, event, period, theory
connector style	This sets the style used for text tag connectors belonging to element assigned to $\langle element name \rangle$ .	nts of type $\langle tag \rangle$ with the colour
	= $\{\langle tag \rangle\}: \{\langle element \ name \rangle\}$	life, event, period
style	This sets the style used for lines (on or near the timeline) belonging the colour assigned to $\langle element name \rangle$ .	g to elements of type $\langle tag \rangle$ with
-	= $\{\langle tag \rangle\}: \{\langle element \ name \rangle\}$	life, event, period, theory, info
style	This sets the style used for text tags belonging to elements of type to $\langle element name \rangle$ .	e $\langle tag \rangle$ with the colour assigned
	We can also use the colour assigned to johannes gutenberg directlike to put a book symbol near this element in the appropriate c	
	Example: \node [colour johannes gutenberg, above left=8 gutenberg.north west, anchor=south east, inner sep=0pt	
	10 Drawing on Chronos Layers	
	See section 6.4.	
chronos background layer $style$	Apply to a scope to draw everything inside on layer chronos ba	ackground.
	<pre>\begin{scope}[on chronos background layer]   \node {Something};% in between the regular background and   \end{scope}</pre>	chronos middle ground

on chronos middle ground Apply to a scope to draw everything inside on layer chronos middle ground.

layer

on

style	\begin{scope}[on chronos middle ground layer]
	<pre>\node {Something};% behind the main layer and chronos background \end{scope}</pre>
	/eug/scope,

stule

on chronos foreground layer Apply to a scope to draw everything inside on layer chronos foreground.

```
\begin{scope}[on chronos foreground layer]
 \node {Something};% above the main layer but behind chronos overlay.
\end{scope}
```

on chronos overlay layer Apply to a scope to draw everything inside on layer chronos overlay. style

By default, chronos puts only debugging information on chronos overlay, which means drawing on this layer should always draw on top of anything constructed by the package code.

```
\begin{scope}[on chronos overlay layer]
  \node {Something over everything else.};
\end{scope}
```

In addition, chronos never puts anything on the non-chronos PGF/TikZ background layer and it would be difficult to persuade it to do so without rewriting internal code. Drawing on *this* layer, therefore, is almost guaranteed to end up behind everything constructed by the package  $code^{34}$ .

```
\begin{scope}[on background layer]% fill area below the timeline
 \fill [blue!25!white] (chronos pre |- chronos bottom) rectangle (chronos post-foot);
\end{scope}
```

#### 11 **Externalising Chronos Timelines with Memoize**

As explained in section 15, chronos timelines cannot be externalised with PGF/TikZ's external. Since PGF/TikZ, in general, and chronos, in particular, can be rather slow to compile, this is serious issue. If you only have a two or three small timelines, the compilation time will be negligible. But if you have a large, densely packed timeline or many timelines, compilation time will quickly become excessive.

Fortunately, chronos environments can be externalised. Moreover, they can be externalised more conveniently, more robustly and more securely, without the need for a separate compilation for each chronos. This means compilation is only a little slower when the timelines are being compiled (whereas compilation would be far slower with the external pgf/ti\emphkz library, even if it worked) and subsequent compilations are fast.

Sašo Živanović's memoize has no trouble compiling this documentation and externalising its timelines. Memoize is a little more trouble to set up initially than the external pgf/ti\emphkz library, but requires far less fine-tuning once configured.

#### To externalise chronos timelines, you must first setup memoization as explained in memoize's documentation<sup>35</sup>.

Chronos supports automemoization out-of-the-box<sup>36</sup>: to enable automatic memoization of chronos environments, simply load memoize early in your preamble. Chronos will then enable 'automemoization' for all timelines<sup>37</sup>.

All chronos styles (except default) and all colour schemes (except default) are defined so that modification will automatically trigger the recompilation of all chronos timelines which use them.

 $<sup>^{34}</sup>$ Unless nefarious T<sub>F</sub>Xnicians have interfered with your installation. It is even quite unlikely a bug would cause this kind of problem, though bugs will doubtless cause many others.

 $<sup>^{35}</sup>$ By default, memoize uses perl and requires the installation of a couple of libraries. If you use Linux or have python already installed, I'd recommend using this method as it requires only a single extra library, is faster and more robust. If you do not wish to use either perl or python, you can use  $T_EX$ , but I have not personally tested this method as it is slower and less secure.

 $<sup>^{36}</sup>$ This fantastic feat was accomplished by copying a line of code from memoize's manual and substituting chronos for the appropriate word. Even I managed to achieve this without major incident.

 $<sup>^{37}</sup>$ Of course, memoization can be disabled permanently or temporarily for some or all timelines. See memoize's documentation for details or look at the code for this document, which disables memoization for fig. 1 to prevent destruction of hyperlinks.

#### 12**Deferring Code**

If you don't know why you might want to use the keys in this section, you don't need to use them.

```
timeline config = \{\langle code \rangle\}
timeline config'
```

timeline config+ Execute additional  $\langle code \rangle$  after chronos has processed the keys at the start of the chronos  $\vec{key}$  environment, but before further processing the resulting configuration and constructing the timeline. These keys are provided primarily for use in chronos style definitions, but may occasionally be useful elsewhere. timeline config and timeline config+ add to the current code; timeline config' replaces it. Note that timeline config' is destructive: it obliterates any existing code chronos has installed, which may be entirely unrelated to the code now being stored. Chronos style authors should never use this form. Even if the code is for purely private use in a locked room with no internet access, you should stick to the additive forms unless your memory is infallible and you always remember to use it.

#### 12.1Additional TikZ

Generally, you can mix arbitrary TikZ code freely into the body of the chronos environment. For example, this is how to add connections between text tags or to decorate your timeline with symbols or ornaments.

However, sometimes you might want to add something after chronos has finished. You might, for example, want to do something after the frame is drawn or place something relative to headings or subheadings Two sets of keys are provided for this purpose. One set enable you to execute arbitrary TikZ code within the picture's bounding box; the other enables you to do so outside. Generally, it is the first set you will want to use; the second are useful in a narrower range of cases and for debugging purposes.

```
chronos tikz' = {\langle TikZ \ commands \rangle}
```

chronos tikz

chronos tikz+ Commands to execute after the  $\langle timeline additions specification \rangle$  and any frame, headings and key subheadings are drawn, but before debugging information is added (see section 14). chronos tikz and chronos tikz+ add to current material; chronos tikz' replaces it. Material added with these keys is included in the final picture's bounding box. If you draw outside the frame and outer border, for example, the final bounding box expands to accommodate it. If you aren't sure which set of keys to use, choose these.

#### chronos tikz outside bb' = { $\langle TikZ \ commands \rangle$ }

chronos tikz outside bb chronos tikz outside bb+ Commands to execute after the  $\langle timeline additions specification \rangle$  and any frame, headings and key subheadings are drawn, but before debugging information is added (see section 14). chronos tikz outside bb and chronos tikz outside bb+ add to current material; chronos tikz outside bb' replaces it. Material added with these keys is excluded when the final picture's bounding box is determined. If you draw outside the frame and outer border, for example,  $T_FX$  will treat it as if it didn't exist and you will need to ensure adequate space is available to accommodate it manually. If you aren't sure which set of keys to use, avoid these.

> Finally, you might want to add material at some specific point in the construction of the picture (e.g. after headings but before the frame). The following sets of keys facilitate such additions.

before headings' = { $\langle TikZ \ commands \rangle$ } before headings before headings+ Commands to execute after the  $\langle timeline additions specification \rangle$ , but before constructing any  $\breve{key}$  headings. before headings and before headings+ add to current material; before headings' replaces it. before drawing frame' = { $\langle TikZ \ commands \rangle$ } before drawing frame+ Commands to execute after the  $\langle timeline additions specification \rangle$  and any headings and subheadings key are drawn, but before constructing any frame. before drawing frame and before drawing frame+ add to current material; before drawing frame' replaces it.

## 13 Custom Schemes and Styles

The macros and keys explained in this section enable you to define custom colour schemes and chronos styles. These may then be used in the same way as those provided by chronos (section 7).

# Customisation is a two-stage process. Chronos styles should not define colours definable by colour schemes.

Colour schemes are straightforward to define; chronos styles are a bit trickier.

#### 13.1 Defining Chronos Colour Schemes

As explained in section 7.2, in addition to the default colours, chronos currently provides blues, contninety, cronoleg, lavender, modern, offlinebasic, offlinealt, sobriety and xcolseries<sup>38</sup> (table 2). xcolseries demonstrates the use of xcolor colour series in chronos colour lists. contninety, modern, offlinebasic and offlinealt illustrate the use of colour schemes to support chronos styles which require minimal modifications of other colour schemes.

New colour schemes should follow the examples in chronos-lib-colschemes.sty<sup>39</sup>. For instance, here's the code to set up blues:

```
\chronosnewcolourscheme{blues}{% chronos-lib-colschemes.sty
  timeline foreground=DodgerBlue4,
  timeline background=DodgerBlue2,
  default below={Cerulean!50!DodgerBlue4,Cerulean!50!DodgerBlue3,Cerulean!50!DodgerBlue2,
  Cerulean!50!DodgerBlue1,Cerulean},
  default above={Cerulean!50!DodgerBlue4,Cerulean!50!DodgerBlue3,Cerulean!50!DodgerBlue2,
  Cerulean!50!DodgerBlue1,Cerulean},
  foreground=DodgerBlue4,
  background=white,
}
```

This is intended for 'off line' timelines so it doesn't include colours for a timeline border, though chronos will derive such colours anyway, as explained below.

There are two pitfalls in defining a colour scheme. First, definitions cannot utilise other chronos colours at this stage. You cannot, therefore, define the middle border colour, for example, in terms of the outer and inner colours.

Second, scheme names must consist of letters only as they are used to create new macros.

chronosnewcolourscheme macro \chronosnewcolorscheme macro

 $\chronosnewcolourscheme [\langle existing \ scheme \rangle] \{\langle name \rangle\} \{\langle key-value \ list \rangle\}$ 

 $[\langle existing \ scheme \rangle] \{\langle name \rangle\} \{\langle key-value \ list \rangle\}$ 

If  $\langle existing \ scheme \rangle$  is specified, it should be the name of an existing colour scheme; otherwise, a default set of colours is loaded.  $\langle name \rangle$  is the name of the new colour scheme and must be a unique string of alphabetic characters suitable for use in a macro name.  $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$  is a list of key-value pairs from the list in table 13.

Schemes need not use all keys<sup>40</sup>. It is sufficient to specify the required deviations from  $\langle existing scheme \rangle$ . For example, here's the code to set up offlinealt,

```
\chronosnewcolourscheme[cronoleg]{offlinealt}{%
  timeline foreground=blue!40,
```

 $^{38}$ Note that xcolseries uses the hsb colour model, which is not supported by PGF/TikZ. If loading this set of colours directly, add /utils/exec= to chronos's optional argument. This is not necessary if loading a chronos style which utilises xcolseries. In either case, all colours in the current chronos environment will be converted to rgb.

<sup>40</sup>In fact, they need not use any, though a colour scheme which uses none would serve no purpose.

 $<sup>^{39}</sup>$ For historical reasons, cronoleg is non-standardly defined as it was the default scheme during most chronos development. The current implementation of this scheme is officially internal. The implementation — as opposed to the scheme — is highly likely to change in backwards-incompatible ways without notice. This warning does not apply to *usage* of the colour scheme, but you should not take it as a model for a new scheme, except to pass it as an option to \chronosnewcolourscheme.

Table 13: Keys for \chronosnewcolourscheme. Note that neither 'colour' nor 'color' appears in any key.

Key	Expected Argument Type	Example
foreground	$\langle colour name \rangle$	chronosblack
background	$\langle colour name \rangle$	chronoswhite
timeline foreground	$\langle colour name \rangle$	chronosCerulean
	$\langle colour name \rangle$	
timeline background	1	chronosDodgerBlue4!50!chronosblack
timeline border outer	$\langle colour name \rangle$	chronoswhite
timeline border inner	$\langle colour name \rangle$	chronosCerulean
timeline border middle	$\langle colour name \rangle$	chronosDodgerBlue4!50!chronosblack
life/default	$\langle colour name \rangle$	chronosDodgerBlue4
event/default	$\langle colour name \rangle$	chronosDodgerBlue4
period/default	$\langle colour name \rangle$	chronosDodgerBlue4
- theory/default	$\langle colour name \rangle$	chronosDodgerBlue4
info/default	$\langle colour name \rangle$	chronosDodgerBlue4
default above	$\langle list of colour names \rangle$	chronosRed, chronosOrange, chronosYellow, chronosGreen, chronosBlue, chronosMidnightBlue, chronosViolet
default below	$\langle list of colour names \rangle$	chronosCerulean!50!chronosDodgerBlue4,
Lordary Dorow	(inter of colour mannes)	chronosCerulean!50!chronosDodgerBlue3,
		chronosCerulean!50!chronosDodgerBlue2,
		chronosCerulean!50!chronosDodgerBlue1,
		chronosCerulean
life/above	$\langle list of colour names \rangle$	chronosDeepPink2, chronosDarkOrange1,
, 45000	1.1.0 of colour names/	chronosFirebrick1, chronosPurple0,
		chronosWildStrawberry, chronosOrangeRed1,
		chronosDarkGoldenrod1, chronosDarkOrchid3
life/below	$\langle list of colour names \rangle$	chronosDodgerBlue3, chronosGreen3, chronosBlue3,
IIIe/ Delow	(list of colour names)	chronosSpringGreen4, chronosDeepSkyBlue2,
		chronosForestGreen, chronosPeriwinkle,
		chronosSeaGreen3
event/above	$\langle list of colour names \rangle$	chronosThistle4,
event/above	(list of colour names)	chronosThistle4!.5!chronosThistle3,
		chronosThistle3,
		<pre>chronosThistle3!.5!chronosThistle2, chronosThistle2</pre>
event (helev	list of colour names	
event/below	$\langle list of colour names \rangle$	chronosSeashell4,
		chronosSeashell4!.5!chronosSeashell3,
		chronosSeashell3,
		chronosSeashell3!.5!chronosSeashell2,
		chronosSeashell2
period/above	$\langle \text{list of colour names} \rangle$	chronosMistyRose4,
		chronosMistyRose4!.5!chronosMistyRose3,
		chronosMistyRose3,
		chronosMistyRose3!.5!chronosMistyRose2,
		chronosMistyRose2
period/below	$\langle \text{list of colour names} \rangle$	chronosIvory4, chronosIvory4!.5!chronosIvory3,
		chronosIvory3, chronosIvory3!.5!chronosIvory2,
		chronosIvory2
theory/above	$\langle list \ of \ colour \ names \rangle$	<pre>xcolor s2!![0],xcolor s2!![1],xcolor</pre>
		s2!![2],xcolor s2!![3],xcolor s2!![4],xcolor
		s2!![5],xcolor s2!![6],xcolor s2!![7],xcolor
		s2!![8],xcolor s2!![9],xcolor s2!![10],xcolor
		s2!![11], xcolor s2!![12],xcolor s2!![13],xcolor
		s2!![14],xcolor s2!![15]
theory/below	$\langle list of colour names \rangle$	<pre>xcolor g2!![0],xcolor g2!![1],xcolor</pre>
-	. ,	g2!![2],xcolor g2!![3],xcolor g2!![4],xcolor
		g2!![5],xcolor g2!![6],xcolor g2!![7],xcolor
		g2!![8],xcolor g2!![9],xcolor g2!![10],xcolor
		g2!![11],xcolor g2!![12],xcolor g2!![13],xcolor
		g2!![14],xcolor g2!![15]

}

#### 13.1.1 How Colour Schemes are Processed

When a colour scheme is loaded, chronos processes the settings in six stages.

- 1. The specified  $\langle existing \ scheme \rangle$  or defaults are loaded.
- 2. Keys for the 'core' colours foreground and background are set and flipped to provide default settings for the 'core derivative' colours timeline foreground and timeline background.
- 3. Keys for the 'core derivative' colours timeline foreground and timeline background are set and the resulting four colours used to derive default settings for the 'core border' colours timeline border inner, timeline border middle and timeline border outer. In particular, timeline border inner is set to match timeline background, timeline border outer is set to background and timeline border middle is set to a 50-50 mix of the two.
- 4. Keys for the 'core border' colours timeline border inner, timeline border middle and timeline border outer are set. The main foreground colour is assigned to the 'elemental' default colours life/default, event/default, period/default, theory/default and info/default.
- Keys for the 'elemental' default colours life/default, event/default, period/default and theory/default are set.
- 6. *Much later*, after the user configuration for the chronos environment has been read, chronos potentially flips the 'core derivative' colours timeline foreground and timeline background. See section 13.2.

Only after this sixth stage are the 'public' names listed in table 14 assigned to the final set of colour scheme-definable colours.

### 13.2 Defining Chronos Styles

The current method for creating chronos styles is straightforward in theory, but potentially hazardous in practice. Here's an example from chronos-lib-styles.sty.

```
\pgfqkeys{/chronos}{%
  blues below/.style={%
    /chronos/.cd,
    blues below/.meaning to context,
    colour scheme=blues,
    rotate all colours,
    timeline={%
      timeline years=above,
      timeline marks.
      timeline minor marks,
      step minor year=50,
      step divisions=10,
      step major year=100,
      dates=1550:2050,
      timeline height'=3pt,
      timeline line={chronos timeline foreground colour,double=chronos timeline
background colour, line width=\timelineht/3, double distance=\timelineht/3},
      timeline arrow,
      conditional timeline arrow={%
        timeline/timeline line+={Bar-Latex,shorten <=-\timelineht/3,shorten >=-3pt-2.1\
timelineht},
        timeline/timeline width-={3pt+2.43\timelineht},
        before headings+={\path (chronos post) -- ++(3pt+2.1\timelineht,0pt) (chronos
pre) -- ++(-\timelineht/3,0pt);},
```

```
}{},
      timeline mark={chronos timeline foreground colour,line width=.6pt,shorten >=-4pt},
      timeline minor mark={chronos timeline foreground colour,line width=.5pt,shorten
>=-3.5pt},
      timeline bare mark={chronos timeline foreground colour,line width=.3pt,shorten
>=-2.5pt},
      timeline year={fill=none,text=chronos timeline foreground colour,rotate around
={45:(chronos year \chronosyeari |- chronos top)}},
      major step font=\sffamily\footnotesize\tlstyle,
      timeline years anchor=south west,
      minor step font=\sffamily\scriptsize\tlstyle,
      timeline margin'=17.5pt,
   },
   minor year format={!Y},
   every event below,
   every life below,
   every period below,
   levels=0:3,
   headings style+={text=chronos main colour!75!chronos main background colour,font=\
small\itshape\bfseries}.
   subheadings style+={text=chronos main colour!75!chronos main background colour,font
=\footnotesize\itshape},
   main/title+={font=\LARGE,text=chronos timeline foreground colour,draw=chronos
timeline background colour, semithick},
   main/frame+={thick,draw,chronos timeline foreground colour,double=chronos timeline
background colour}.
   copyright={font=\footnotesize\sffamily, inner sep=0pt, outer sep=0pt, text=chronos
timeline foreground colour!50!chronos main background colour},
   copyright/rotate=90,
    copyright/tag anchor=north west,
 },
}
```

This definition is chosen because it is one of the most technically complex examples. This complexity is a function of several factors: it uses *off-line* years; the year labels are rotated; the line involves two arrow tips; and the line is drawn with double.

Note the following:

- 1. colours listed in table 13 are used but not defined;
- 2. instead, a custom colour configuration is set by loading an appropriate colour scheme;
- 3. there is a weird looking \chronosyeari in the definition of timeline year;
- 4. timeline/timeline arrow and timeline/conditional timeline arrow enables use of arrow tips to be toggled off;
- 5. dates are defined, even though they are almost certainly wrong in most cases;
- 6. .meaning to context is used, even though the user might not have loaded memoize, which defines it.
- 7. some fonts use a non-standard command \tlstyle.

Item 7 need not concern us here. If certain packages are loaded, it ensures tabular, lining figures; if not, chronos provides a command with this name at the end of the preamble by simply \letting it to \upshape.

Regarding item 5, the standard chronos styles all define dates, but whether they should do so is another question. On the one hand, if they are not defined (as they are not if no chronos style is loaded), chronos will generate an error, alerting the user to the deficiency. Since it is highly unlikely any default choice will suit any user, let alone most of them, an error might be considered appropriate. On the other hand, some chronos styles are far more suitable for some temporal ranges than others. For example, consider this excerpt from the definition of contemporary 90:

```
timeline={%
   timeline marks,
   timeline minor marks,
   timeline mark={ultra thick},
   timeline minor mark={thick},
   step divisions=4,
   step major years=2,
},
```

This is fine for a timeline of a decade or two, but quite unsuitable for one representing either the period 3,000 BCE-2025 CE or the first half of 1857. While a user can always modify these settings, along with the dates, a default range provides a sense of the temporal duration the chronos style is suitable for 'out-of-the-box'.

The author of this package has found a comfortable spot on a convenient fence and intends to stay there, whatever the provided chronos styles might suggest. The reader is warned to make the most of the fences available here, as there are none whatsoever in the next section.

#### 13.2.1 How (Not) to Customise Colours

Items 1 and 2 are the most important. *Chronos styles* MUST NOT *set core, core derivative or core border colours,* where 'core, core derivative and core border colours' refer to those listed in tables 13 and 14. In many cases, violating this rule may appear to work, but in others doing so will produce weird results or errors.

Moreover, *chronos styles* should not *set any other* colour key *or* colour list *directly*. In many cases, violating this rule may appear to work, but in others doing so will cause things not to work as expected.

#### To summarise, if it can be done by a colour scheme, it should be done by a colour scheme<sup>41</sup>.

The reason for this restriction is that the colours are not finalised and the public colour names are not defined when the colour scheme and/or chronos style are read. Initially, chronos assigns colours only to internal names. When the user configuration in the  $\langle chronos \ preamble \rangle$  has been read, chronos starts the tikzpicture environment and further processes the configuration before drawing the timeline. As part of this processing, chronos makes changes to colours in specified circumstances.

In particular, the colours assigned to the timeline foreground and background are switched if three conditions are satisfied.

- 1. The internal colour names for chronos timeline foreground colour and chronos timeline background colour evaluate to the same colour specification.
- 2. One of the specifications is identical to the colour specification for white.
- 3. timeline years is not on line.

Condition 3 cannot be determined until the complete configuration has been read. In particular, it is not known when colour schemes and chronos styles are read. While it is recommended users select a chronos style congruent with their preferred setting for timeline years, this is intended to make configuration easier and is not a requirement.

Only *after* colours are potentially switched are the public names listed in table 14 assigned, long after colour schemes and chronos styles have been read.

It is nonetheless possible, indeed recommended, to *use* the public names in chronos styles, though they cannot be used in colour schemes. It is only *defining* them at this stage which is problematic.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>41</sup>That is, 'can implies ought'.

Table 14: Keys and names for chronos colours. Note that neither 'colour' nor 'color' appears in any key in the first column, but in every key in the second. In the second column, 'color' may be substituted for 'colour' in any name.

			Colour Schemes Key	Later Accessible As	_
	С	core {	foreground background	chronos main colour chronos main background colour	<b>C</b>
MUST NOT	0	core { derivative \	timeline foreground timeline background	chronos timeline foreground colour chronos timeline background colour	O R
define! <b>R</b> <b>E</b> core { border {	timeline border outer timeline border inner timeline border middle	chronos timeline border outer colour chronos timeline border inner colour chronos timeline border middle colour	E		
	E L E	default ) colours	life/default event/default period/default theory/default info/default	- - - -	
Should NOT touch!	M E N T A L	colour / lists	default above default below life/above life/below event/above event/below period/above period/below theory/above theory/below	- - - - - - - -	

Here is an example from the definition of modern in chronos-lib-styles:

```
timeline line={chronos timeline background colour, opacity=1},
    period/line={fill=chronos timeline foreground colour, blend mode=overlay},
    life/line={fill=chronos timeline foreground colour, blend mode=overlay},
    event/line={draw=chronos timeline foreground colour, thick, blend mode=overlay},
    every text tags={fill=chronos main background colour, text=####1, fill opacity=.75,
    text opacity=1, draw=none, rounded corners, align=center, font=\sffamily\footnotesize},
```

This is perfectly proper<sup>42</sup>. However, if you were to include something such as

timeline border middle colour=chronos timeline border inner colour!50!chronos timeline border outer colour,

you would get an error complaining about the use of undefined colours. The definition of timeline border middle colour is the prerogative of the colour scheme and shouldn't feature in a chronos style at all, but this particular definition is illegitimate in any case because neither chronos timeline border inner colour nor chronos timeline border outer colour yet exists.

But why shouldn't chronos styles include colour definitions of the kind permitted in colour schemes? Because chronos processes the definitions in colour schemes as they are read (section 13.1.1). If you put

foreground=SlateBlue4,
background=Snow1,

X

in a chronos style, *only* these colours will be set. In particular, neither the timeline nor any default colours will be affected at all. But if you put this into a colour scheme, chronos will derive colours for the timeline and set default colours for elements belonging to the various tags. If no other changes are made, the result will be a white-on-blue timeline with blue-to-white timeline borders and blue as the fallback colour for tag elements. (This is probably wrong for off line and chronos won't correct you because Snow1 isn't exactly white, but that's why colour schemes should do either a bit more or a bit less than this.)

If you wish, your chronos style can load a colour scheme of its own. This is what many of the standard chronos styles do. For instance, here is the sum total of modern's modern colour scheme,

```
\chronosnewcolourscheme{modern}{%
   timeline foreground=chronosSilver,
}
```

#### 13.2.2 How to Rotate Years

Item 3 is a function of this style's rotation of the year labels created for the timeline. The easiest way to do this is to rotate around one of the anchors belonging to the node containing the relevant year. Obviously, we can't do this for each node. We don't know how many there are or what they are named. Instead, we need a hook into the \foreach loop chronos uses when creating the year labels.

\chronosyeari refers to the current year inside the \foreach loop used to mark years on the timeline. (chronos
 macro year \chronosyeari) isn't actually the node, but the point representing the date on the timeline,
 but the node starts there, so we can use it provided timeline years anchor is set appropriately.

timeline year={rotate around={45:(chronos year \chronosyeari |- chronos top)}},
timeline years anchor=south west,

 $^{42}$ At least, it is fine as far as chronos goes. Whether it is proper TikZ code is not for me to judge.

#### 13.2.3 Hashes

You may have noticed the following line in the excerpt from modern's definition above.

every text tags={fill=chronos main background colour, text=####1, fill opacity=.75, text opacity=1, draw=none, rounded corners, align=center, font=\sffamily\footnotesize},

Anywhere you'd normally use a single hash (e.g. #1) in defining a TikZ style, you need two (##1) because you're nesting that definition within the definition of another style. So it is not surprising to find lines such as

```
connections={draw=##1, {Triangle[width=0pt 3,reversed,length=0pt 1.5]}-{Triangle[width
=0pt 5,reversed,length=0pt 2.5]}},
```

in modern's definition, but why four?

Certain keys require one or more additional doublings of hashes. Anytime you use an every key, you need to double. Double double makes four, so we get text=####1<sup>43</sup>.

Elsewhere, a single doubling is generally sufficient, as shown in these lines from the definition of plain arrow

```
period/line+={line width=2pt,draw=##1},
life/line+={line width=2pt,draw=##1},
```

Incidentally, PGF doesn't complain if you quadruple the hashes here, though it does so if you make the same mistake elsewhere. So silence does not always indicate correctness. This is important if you're debugging: don't assume because a pattern generates no error in one case, it cannot be the source of an error in another.

Note also that if you say

```
text tags={draw=####1,sharp corners,text opacity=1,fill opacity=1,draw opacity=1,
drop shadow},
```

T<sub>F</sub>X will give you an error suggesting you haven't used *enough* hashes,

?

If you double the hashes *again* (#######1), you'll get the same error. The actual problem is that you've used too many.

```
text tags={draw=##1,sharp corners,text opacity=1,fill opacity=1,draw opacity=1,drop
shadow},
```

is correct in a chronos style definition i.e. twice the number required in the  $\langle chronos \ preamble \rangle$ . If you reduce the hashes to one (#1), you'll get no error but the wrong output as the element's colour won't be used.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>43</sup>For real fun with hashes, may I recommend chronos or forest?

#### Despite this, chronos styles should always use chronos keys and hashes for colours.

Hashes are essential for two reasons.

- 1. Hard-coding colours breaks colour rotation. In order for colours to be not just assigned in rotation, but used for the elements they are assigned to, chronos style definitions must use the colour names passed to them. So hashes are essential when defining the properties of tag elements subject to colour rotation.
- 2. Chronos cannot track colours it doesn't know about and it doesn't know about colours passed directly to PGF/TikZ keys. Hard-coding colours breaks the system of colour names chronos provides. Chronos will assign colour names to colours regardless, but the names will not refer to the colours actually used. They will merely refer to the colours assigned. Chronos styles are responsible for ensuring assigned colours are used so chronos colour names work correctly. Suppose a chronos style includes event/text tag+={text=red}, event/connection+={draw=red}. Chronos will keep assigning colours to elements of tag type event, but it will not assign 'red' except by happy chance.

Example: \draw [chronos connect=period:red letter day] ...

will still work, but may well use black or navy blue rather than the pillar box red expected. Since this referencing system works for some elements not subject to colour rotation at all, such as those belonging to tag info and applies even when colour rotation is disabled completely, it constitutes a more general reason to avoid hard-coding colours, even if the effects may be less immediately noticeable in some timelines.

#### 13.2.4**Timeline Arrow**

Chronos styles must decide whether to support timelines with and/or without one or more arrow tips and/or line caps. In deciding this, note the following points.

- Only off line styles can support these features.
- Adding, removing or modifying a tip or cap requires adjusting the timeline width. This is because the length available for representing time is reduced when some proportion of the timeline line is used for a tip or cap. Chronos adjusts automatically for timeline margins and timeline era margins, but styles are responsible for other adjustments.
- Supporting both arrowed and non-arrowed variants therefore requires conditionalised code.
- Each arrow tip and line cap requires a bespoke adjustment, even if used in default form.
- Users may legitimately use timeline/timeline arrow and timeline/no timeline arrow after loading a chronos style.
- Chronos styles may legitimately ignore these keys.
- Chronos styles must delay finalising the content of timeline until the end of the  $\langle chronos \rangle$ preamble) if they wish to support variants with and without tips and/or caps.

See timeline/timeline arrow and timeline/no timeline arrow.

timeline arrow

```
timeline/conditional = {\langle =key-value \ list \ if \ arrow/cap \rangle}key-value list otherwise
```

This key expects two arguments:  $\langle key-value \ list \ if \ arrow/cap \rangle$  should be a list of key-values to keybe executed if timeline/timeline arrow is true;  $\langle key value list otherwise \rangle$  should be a list of key-values to be executed if it is false. Chronos will switch the key path to /chronos/ prior to using the list, but the timeline prefix must be specified if required. The effect is to add code to the style timeline/do timeline arrow which executes  $\langle key-value \ list \ if \ arrow/cap \rangle$  if timeline arrow is true and  $\langle key$ -value list otherwise  $\rangle$  otherwise. More specifically, the code used to implement this mechanism is equivalent to

```
conditional timeline arrow/.code 2 args={%
  \pgfqkeys{/chronos}{%
   llinell amser/.cd,
```

-94 of 125 -

```
timeline@arrow/.style={/chronos/.cd,#1},
no@timeline@arrow/.style={/chronos/.cd,#2},
do timeline arrow/.add code={%
    \ifchronostimelinearrow
    \tikzset{/chronos/llinell amser/timeline@arrow}%
    \else
        \tikzset{/chronos/llinell amser/no@timeline@arrow}%
    \fi
    },
}%
```

If the timeline uses off line yearss,  $pgfqkeys{\langle /chronos/timeline \rangle}{\langle do timeline arrow \rangle}$  is executed after timeline/timeline height is finalised.

Example: See below.

#### timeline/do timeline arrow

key

Chronos styles are expected to set this *via* timeline/conditional timeline arrow, which causes it to be executed in timeline config, but they could also execute it explicitly if required.

Default: dependent on other options

For example, lines on line supports arrowed and non-arrowed variants using

```
lines on line/.style={% https://tex.stackexchange.com/a/324453/
  /chronos/.cd.
  . . .
  timeline={%
    timeline width'=120mm,
    . . .
    timeline arrow,
    conditional timeline arrow={%
      timeline/timeline width'-=20mm,
      timeline/timeline line+={shorten >=-20mm, -{Triangle Cap[length=20mm]}},
      before headings+={%
        \path (chronos post) -- +(20mm,0pt);
      },
    }{},
  },
},
```

timeline arrow requests an arrow by default, but does nothing else. conditional timeline arrow sets up the style keys to execute if timeline arrow is still enabled when do timeline arrow is executed. At this stage, then, no actual changes are applied to the style to be applied to the timeline.

The actual effects on the timeline's style are determined only at the end of  $\langle chronos \ preamble \rangle$  when timeline/do timeline arrow is executed. Hence, the user may override the style's use of timeline arrow by writing timeline/timeline arrow=false or timeline/no timeline arrow after loading lines on line.

Styles which support timeline arrows must do the following to ensure correct results<sup>44</sup>.

1. Set timeline/timeline arrow if an arrow, non-default line-cap or similar is to be default.

chronos discards the bounding box which includes the arrows immediately after drawing them and it is not possible (as far as I can tell) to extract the required information, even though PGF has just performed all these calculations itself.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>44</sup>This is necessary because

- 2. Use timeline/conditional timeline arrow if a non-arrow is to be supported and configure the arrow/cap/spacer(s) *only* using this conditional.
- 3. Decrease timeline/timeline width by the total length of arrows, caps and spacers. At the beginning of the chronos environment, this dimension must equal the actual length available for the timeline era margins, timeline margins and the representation of time, else marks and years may be placed onto arrows or caps.

The recommended way to do this at present is to

- (a) calculate the total length of arrows, caps and spacers by hand and use timeline/timeline width'= {(total length)} to subtract it from the user-specified width<sup>45</sup>;
- (b) add shorten >= and/or shorten <=, as appropriate, to increase the length of the line just while it is being drawn.
- 4. Ensure the bounding box includes any arrows, caps and spacers.

One way to achieve this is to

- (a) use **before headings+** to place coordinates at the tip and very tail of the arrow/cap/spacer(s).
- 5. Calculations must account for \pgflinewidth and, if applicable, any use of double, in order to avoid overfull boxes.

#### 13.2.5 Styles and Automemoization

It is recommended that chronos styles are configured so that externalised **chronos timelines** which use them are automatically recompiled if the styles' definitions change. This can be achieved by adding  $\langle name \ of \ style \rangle /.meaning \ to \ context$  to each chronos style's definition. For example, the packaged styles all use the following template to begin their definitions.

```
\pgfqkeys{/chronos}{%
  <name of style>/.style={%
    /chronos/.cd,
    <name of style>/.meaning to context,
    ...
  },
}
```

This is safe, even if memoize isn't used, because chronos provides a fallback key handler, .meaning to context which does nothing.

#### **13.3** Defining Styles for Additional Elements

Due to the way chronos manages tag contexts, creating custom styles to apply to the additional elements explained in section 9 is not necessarily straightforward.

If you only want to use non-chronos keys in your style, however, it *is* straightforward. Simply create whatever PGF/TikZ styles you wish and add them to particular elements as you deem appropriate.

The trouble starts if you want to define style which include chronos keys. More particularly, difficulties arise if you want to use keys which are specific to tag contexts such as at or tag anchor. For example, the timeline in fig. 1 uses three custom styles, tag left, tag post and tag right to place text tags. Consider the definition of tag right,

 $<sup>^{45}</sup>$ Accurate calculation requires knowledge of \pgflinewidth, any use of double, custom options passed to the arrow and details of the formula PGF uses to calculate the length for the specific types of arrow tips and/or line caps configured. In some cases, this information is included in the TikZ manual but, in most cases, you must consult the source of the arrows.meta pgf/ti\emphkz library.

```
at/.expand once=level -##1.south -| ##2,
tag anchor=north west,
anchor=south west,
xshift=5pt,
connectors=east,
```

It uses at and tag anchor, which are tag-specific chronos keys, as well as the anchor and xshift PGF/TikZ keys. A naïve approach would suggest

```
x tag right/.style 2 args={%
    at/.expand once=level -##1.south -| ##2,
    tag anchor=north west,
    anchor=south west,
    xshift=5pt,
    connectors=east,
    },
```

but this will fail. Less naïvely, you might fiddle with path prefixes, but this won't work reliably either because chronos effectively activates some tag-specific settings by installing them temporarily under /chronos. Meanwhile, it redefines a subset of both the global and tag-specific keys to ensure local element-specific settings don't 'leak'<sup>46</sup>.

The result of all this is that you cannot generally use standard PGF/TikZ techniques to define styles involving chronos keys for use in creating chronos elements belonging to tags. Given the aims of chronos, this is a significant limitation only partially mitigated by the following workaround.

Chronos provides a PGF/TikZ key handler to facilitate the creation of straightforward styles, but the current version has significant limitations I've not been able to solve.

.chronos key maker = { \key name \} { \pgf key handler \} { \value \} key handler \} { \value \}

 $\langle key name \rangle$  should be a name suitable for a PGF/TikZ key.  $\langle pgf key handler \rangle$  should be a PGF key handler, without the leading dot, such as style 2 args or ecode.  $\langle value \rangle$  should be the value or definition for  $\langle key name \rangle$ . Only handlers which expect a single argument may be used. This limits the maximum number of arguments  $\langle key name \rangle$  can absorb to two, since the only PGF key handlers capable of absorbing three or more arguments themselves require two or more.

The key handler is available in the  $\langle chronos \ preamble \rangle$  and in  $\backslash chronosset$ . It requires a single doubling of hashes.

Example:

Here are the definitions of tag left, tag post and tag right mentioned above.

```
tag right/.chronos key maker={tag right}{style 2 args}{%}
 at/.expand once=level -##1.south -| ##2,
 tag anchor=north west,
 anchor=south west.
 xshift=5pt,
  connectors=east,
},
tag left/.chronos key maker={tag left}{style 2 args}{%
 at/.expand once=level -##1.south -| ##2,
 tag anchor=north east,
 anchor=south east,
 xshift=-5pt,
 text tag+={align=right},
}.
tag post/.chronos key maker={tag post}{style}{%
 at=level -##1.south -| chronos end,
```

 $<sup>^{46}</sup>$ PGF/TikZ has this type of containment down to a fine art. Chronos's approach is altogether cruder.

```
tag anchor=north west,
anchor=south east,
connect=false,
connectors=east,
},
```

Note tag post's use of the standard coordinate chronos end (fig. 3).

### 14 Debugging

Note that many keys in this section draw on chronos overlay layer. They will typically draw **over** content you've created. This should not be a concern as they are not intended for use in the final document.

If enabled, any helper nodes created with levels will be visible rather than invisible<sup>47</sup> and vertical lines corresponding to headings will be drawn. This option is intended to assist in the creation of complex timelines.

Default: on

Initially: off

#### placeholder lines = { $\langle key-value \ list \rangle$ } style

The style used to draw any lines created when placeholders is enabled. The style may be modified or replaced using the usual TikZ techniques, but the settings for nodes should not be altered in a way which changes their size e.g. by setting line width or similar.

```
\begin{chronos}
  [
    placeholders,
    placeholder lines/.append style={thick},% for the default nodes and similar lines,
    but thicker
        placeholder lines/.style={thin,draw=magenta,<->},% for magenta double-arrowed
lines with no changes to nodes
    ]
    \end{chronos}
```

Default: help lines, every node/.append style=rotate=-90,anchor=south,pos=.25,inner sep=0pt

The following were created for use in developing the package, but some may be more generally useful. Those which seem most likely to be helpful are listed first.

Note that all of the keys which follow ignore the picture's bounding box. This means they will disappear (or partially disappear) with no warning if there is insufficient space. This may be a concern, but having half the timeline disappear from view is worse.

show coords = true|false
 boolean key

Labels a selection of **chronos** coordinates, which may be useful for placement or trouble-shooting purposes.

Default: true

Initially: false

show bounding box = true|false boolean key

Draws the bounding box of the tikzpicture containing the timeline.

 $^{47}$ I am grateful to Qrrbrbirlbel for providing the code implementing this at T<sub>E</sub>X StackExchange: 694967.

Default: true

Initially: false

```
show nodes = true|false
boolean key
```

key

If, and only if, timeline mark eras is explicitly enabled (as opposed to being enabled just because a timeline spans BCE and CE), draws and labels the nodes containing the era labels on the timeline.

Default: true

Initially: false

debug A convenience key which switches on all four of the options above.

\begin{chronos}
 debug,
 \end{chronos}

The following keys are available to customise the output of the options in this section.

```
show coordinate colour = \langle colour name \rangle
 show coordinate color
               colour key Default: red
        show bb colour = \langle colour name \rangle
         show bb color
               colour key Default: green
      show node colour = \langle colour name \rangle
       show node color
               colour key Default: blue
       show coordinate A style used to show coordinates. It is used both directly and indirectly by both show coord
                    style and show node coord. If you want to redefine it, it should take 5 arguments: a colour name, an
                         angle, the name of the coordinate, a dimension and a (possibly empty) key-value list.
                         Default: fill=#1, circle, anchor=center, inner sep=1pt, text=#1, pin={[#1, inner
                         sep=0pt, pin edge={draw=#1}, pin distance=#4, #5]#2:#3}
             show coord A style used to show coordinates. If you want to redefine it, it should take 2 arguments: the
                    style name of the coordinate and an angle.
                         Default: /chronos/show coordinate={\langle chronos show coordinate colour \rangle}{#1}{#2}{30pt}}
       show node coord A style used to show particular points on nodes. If you want to redefine it, it should take 2
                    style arguments: the name of the coordinate and an angle.
                         Default: /chronos/show coordinate={ chronos show node colour } {#1} {#2} { 30pt } }
    \chronosshowcolour [(\macroname)]{(colour name)}
                   macro
                         [\langle \text{macroname} \rangle] \{\langle \text{colour name} \rangle\}
   \chronosshowcolour*
                   macro
     \chronosshowcolor [(\macroname)] {(colour name)}
                  macro
    \chronosshowcolor* [(\macroname)] {(colour name)}
                   macro
                         Extract the colour specification of (colour name) to the macro (\macroname). The starred forms
                         show \langle \text{Mmacroname} \rangle; the remainder merely (re)define it. In case it is not obvious, don't use a
                         (\macroname) you care about as it will be overwritten without warning. By default, an internal
                         macro is used and reused, so, if you don't specify (\macroname), you can only inspect one colour
                         specification at a time.
```

Example: \chronosshowcolour\*{white}

will show the colour specification of white on the terminal.

The remainder are unlikely to be helpful except in debugging **chronos** and no attempt has been made to render their output intelligible.

\chronosshowpreset Show non-default globalised options. This shows the properties<sup>48</sup> currently recorded as set by the user. This includes selected options set by chronos styles and options set with \chronosset, but not defaults set by chronos when loading. This list is used in deciding whether to change the current setting of an option during timeline configuration. For example, if a user specifically requests off line years with a timeline height of 50mm in white-on-blue, chronos won't override those settings. But if a user asks for off line years without specifying timeline height or changing the default colours, chronos will try to select something reasonable for timeline height and assume the user wants black-on-white rather than white-on-white.

The output of \chronosshowpreset is unlikely to prove especially enlightening unless debugging chronos. Here, for example, is the output when used at the start of a sample chronos environment,

```
The sequence \l_chronos_gosod_seq is empty > .
```

and right after the optional argument has been processed,

The sequence \l\_\_chronos\_gosod\_seq contains the items (without outer braces):

- > {angor@blynyddoedd}
- > {timeline@years}
- > {@digwyddiad@llawn}
- > {@byw@llawn}
- > {@parhad@llawn}
- > {markeras}
- > {llinell}
- > {cysylltiad}
- > {llinell amser}
- > {border}.

So this user didn't specify any non-default settings in the document preamble or with \chronosset, but has either set or specified a chronos style which set various options for this particular chronos environment, which chronos should respect. Note that the output tells us nothing about what has been chosen, but only *that* an explicit choice has been made. For example, markeras means the user has decided eras should or should not be marked on the timeline, but does not tell us which.

#### \chronosshowfeatures [ $\langle tag angle$ ]

macro

life, event, period, theory, info

Shows properties<sup>49</sup> assigned to either the current or  $\langle tag \rangle$  context. Note that the output uses the original names for tags, which differ from those documented in this manual. life, event, period, theory and info correspond to byw, digwyddiad, parhad, theori and gwybodaeth.

Without an argument, the default list of properties is shown if the command is executed outside a tag context; otherwise, the list for the current context is shown. With an argument, the list of properties for  $\langle tag \rangle$  is shown regardless of execution context.

There is no list of properties associated with tag main.

Here's the output from \chronosshowfeatures inside a chronos environment, but outside any tag context,

```
The property list \l__chronos_prop contains the pairs (without outer braces):
> {@tag} => {{,/chronos/troi lliwiau=false,/chronos/blynyddoedd yn
unig,/chronos/heb gyfnodau,/chronos/troi lliwiau=true}}
> {@cysylltwr@chronos} => {{coordinate}}
```

```
> {@cysylltwr@testun} => {{anchor=center,inner sep=0pt,outer
```

 $<sup>^{48}</sup>$  Specifically, the contents of the expl3 sequence used to record the names of chronos properties.  $^{49}$  Specifically, expl3 property lists.

```
sep=Opt,circle, anchor=center, draw=none, fill=none, minimum
size=\pgflinewidth }}
> {@llinell} => {{}}
> {@testun} => {{fill=chronos main background colour, text=####1, fill
opacity=.75, text opacity=1, draw=none, rounded corners, align=center,
font=\sffamily \footnotesize ,draw=####1,sharp corners,text opacity=1,fill
opacity=1,draw opacity=1,drop shadow}}
> {@cysylltiad} => {{draw=##1, {Triangle[width=0pt 3,reversed,length=0pt
1.5]}-{Triangle[width=Opt 5,reversed,length=Opt 2.5]}}.
and from \chronosshowfeatures[event],
The property list \l__chronos_digwyddiad_prop contains the pairs (without
outer braces):
> {@cysylltwr@chronos} => {{coordinate}}
> {@cysylltwr@testun} => {{circle, anchor=center, draw=none, fill=none,
minimum size=\pgflinewidth }}
> {@testun} => {{fill=chronos main background colour, text=##1, fill
opacity=.75, text opacity=1, draw=none, rounded corners, align=center,
font=\sffamily \footnotesize ,draw=##1,sharp corners,text opacity=1,fill
opacity=1,draw opacity=1,drop shadow}}
> {@tag} => {{/chronos/blynyddoedd yn unig,/chronos/heb
gyfnodau,/chronos/troi lliwiau=true}}
> {@llinell} => {{draw=chronos timeline foreground colour, thick, blend
mode=overlay}}.
```

Public name	Chronos internal name
\ceyearlabel	\chronos@yearce
\bceyearlabel	\chronos@yearbce
\celabel	\chronos@ce
\bcelabel	\chronos@bce
\timelineht	\chronos@height
\timelineborderht	\chronos@borderheight
\timelinewd	\chronos@width
<b>\lineyshift</b>	\chronos@llinell@yshift

Table 15: Public names for chronos internal macros defined locally within the  $\langle timeline specification \rangle$ .

Table 16: Public names for chronos internal macros defined if undefined at the end of the preamble.

Public name	Chronos internal name
\ceyearlabel	\chronos@yearce
\bceyearlabel	\chronos@yearbce
\celabel	\chronos@ce
\bcelabel	\chronos@bce

# 15 Compatibility

Chronos timelines cannot be externalised using TikZ's external  $pgf/ti\enphkz\ library^{50}$ .

TikZ's spy pgf/ti\emphkz library also appears to be incompatible.

Arrow tips and line caps from TikZ's arrows pgf/ti\emphkz library are not supported in timeline. Please use arrows.meta instead.

Chronos defines some commands without either marking them as internal or using a package-specific prefix. These commands are of the following kinds.

- They use Welsh rather than English (\byw, \digwyddiad, \parhad, \gwybodaeth, \theori, \cylchtheori and \prifdeitl). These all use \NewDocumentCommand. Should they already be defined, IATEX  $2_{\varepsilon}$  will produce an error and existing definitions will not be overwritten.
- They are defined only locally within the (timeline specification). These provide local access to chronos internals and do not use a package-specific prefix for reasons of convenience. These macros are listed in table 15. Note that some of these macros are also defined conditionally at the end of the preamble. The local definitions described here are unconditional.
- They are 'throwaway', extremely temporary macros such as \tempa. These are used only very, very locally. Any macro which needs to retain its definition for more than a few lines uses a chronos@ prefix unless it is a variable in a PGF \foreach loop.
- They are defined only if undefined at the end of the preamble, so existing definitions are maintained without warning or error. This applies to cases where either chronos uses a command if it is available (e.g. \uishape), but needs a fallback otherwise, or a public macro is made available as a convenience, if the user is not using the name already (e.g. \celabel). These macros are listed in tables 16 and 17.
- They are differently-named replacements for a subset of etoolbox macros and tests<sup>51</sup>, which are defined only if they do not exist. If they already exist, chronos produces a warning and continues, hoping for the best. This set of macros is compatible with etoolbox, which chronos depends on for patching purposes.

 $<sup>^{50}</sup>$ However, chronos pictures *can* be 'memoized'. Moreover, if memoize is loaded, chronos will set up 'automemoization' by default. See section 11.

 $<sup>^{51}</sup>$ They are a response to advice not to mix expl3 and etoolbox. Since I'd originally thought it was better to use etoolbox functions than create a slew of wrappers for expl3 functions, these are the products of the resulting rewrite. Despite my best efforts, the dependency on etoolbox remains, but usage is confined to cases where expl3 does not offer equivalent functionality.

Functionality used if defined	Chronos fallback definition
\tlstyle	\let\tlstyle\upshape
\plstyle	\let\plstyle\upshape
\uishape	\let\uishape\itshape
\textui	\DeclareTextFontCommand{\textui}{\uishape}
\sishape	\DeclareRobustCommand\sishape{\itshape\scshape}
\textsi	$\label{eq:large} \label{eq:large} \lab$

Table 17: Fallback definitions for macros undefined at the end of the preamble.

Table 18: Approximate replacements for etoolbox macros.

etoolbox	chronos expl3 wrapper
\ifundef	\IfFreeTF, \IfFreeT and \IfFreeF
∖ifdef	\IfExistTF, \IfExistT and \IfExistF
\ifcsundef	\IfCSFreeTF, \IfCSFreeT and \IfCSFreeF
∖ifcsdef	\IfCSExistTF, \IfCSExistT and \IfCSExistF
\undef	\Undefine
\csletcs	\CSletCS
\cslet	\CSlet
∖ifboolexpr	\IfBooleanExprTF, \IfBooleanExprT and \IfBooleanExprF
bool	\LegacyBoolean
test	\CSFreeBoolean
\ifnumcomp	\IntCompareBoolean, \IfIntCompareTF, \IfIntCompareT and \IfIntCompareF

However, they may be incompatible with packages I'm unaware of or which are not yet published, in which case the warnings may prove informative. These macros are listed in table 18.

### 15.1 Compatibility with Code from TEX SE Answers

The CTAN release of chronos is not backwards compatible with versions published on  $T_EX$  StackExchange. However, there are several methods you can use to update most timelines produced using code from answers there. Which approach is best depends on the specific case.

I suggest four possible approaches below. Of these, methods 1 and 2 are strongly recommended. The remaining methods 3(a) and 3(b) are for those keen for adventures in the typesetting hinterlands, desperate souls suffering in imminent-deadline hells and the perilously inquisitive with too much time on their hands. They are included because most of us, at one time or another, find ourselves in situations of the second type, even if we are too home-loving and incurious to dare the others.

**Method 1:** If you intend to develop work utilising code from  $T_EX$  SE answers further, I strongly recommend taking the time to switch to the new key-value interface and **chronos** environment. This method is the most work, but also the most reliable and flexible. There is no guarantee that either of the alternative methods methods 3(a) and 3(b) will work or continue to work with future chronos releases. Method 2 is an option, but if you are actively developing a timeline, the flexibility of chronos should make things easier and provide options otherwise unavailable. If you put more work in and then find the code you have insufficient to your needs, you will only have delayed and expanded the task of updating.

Method 2: If you don't intend to develop existing timelines further, I strongly recommend not loading chronos, renaming any existing file to avoid conflicts and doing an ultra-simple update so existing documents load the renamed file. This is the simplest, most straightforward option. Why fix what ain't broke? If the code you have works and you're satisfied with the results, you need this package like a head needs an ache. The only thing you should do — and you really *should* do this — is rename any conflicting package you created locally. That is, if you've stuck code from an SE answer in a file named chronos.sty, I strongly recommend renaming it to, for example, chronos-se.sty to avoid conflicts. Then you can use chronos in new documents and just change the \usepackage invocation to chronos-se in old ones.

- 103 of 125 -

Method 3: If methods 1 and 2 aren't options — if, say, you want to use this package for a new timeline in a document with existing timelines and you don't have time to update those, then one of the following pairs of definitions *may* produce more-or-less the same output from existing or slightly modified code. Note that there is no guarantee this will work in any particular case or, if it does, that it will continue to work with future releases of chronos. It may, however, provide a quick-and-dirty fix if you are stuck.

(a) This requires minimal changes to existing code. You will need to modify existing timelines to use the chronos environment if they are currently in tikzpicture environments. Then place the following code *into the preamble* of your document:

```
\usepackage{chronos}
\makeatletter
% The following definitions **MUST** be in the premable.
% They will **NOT** work if placed after \begin{document}
% or before \usepackage{chronos}.
% BEGIN \chronosevent
\NewDocumentCommand \chronosevent { 0 {} m 0 {} +m D () { \chronos@testun@yshift } }
{% #1 [<connection options>]
%
   #2 {<date>}
%
   #3 [<text tag options>]
%
   #4 {<text>}
%
   #5 (<yshift>)
 \digwyddiad{%
    date=#2.
    name=#4,
    yshift=#5,
    text tag+=\{\#3\},
    connection+={#1},
 }%
}
% END \chronosevent
% BEGIN \chronosperiod
\NewDocumentCommand \chronosperiod { 0 {} m 0 {} +m D () { \chronos@testun@yshift } }
{%
   #1 [<line options>]
%
    #2 {<start date>}
%
    #3 [<connection options>]
%
    #4 {<end date>}
%
    #5 [<text tag options>]
%
    #6 {<text>}
%
    #7 (<yshift>)
  \parhad{%
    start=#2,
    end=#4,
    name=#6,
    yshift=#7,
    connection+={#3},
    text tag+={\#5},
    line+={#1},
 }%
}
% END \chronosperiod
\makeatother
```

If you use this method, you *cannot* use the key-value versions of \chronosevent and \chronosperiod. Instead, you will need to use \digwyddiad for events and \parhad for periods when you wish to make use of the new features.

(b) Alternatively, update all existing environments to use chronos as explained in method 3(a), if re-

quired. Then replace every occurrence of  $\$  and  $\$  and  $\$  becomes present and  $\$  becomes present and  $\$  becomes present and  $\$  becomes present and becomes pres

```
\usepackage{chronos}
\makeatletter
% BEGIN \chronoslegacyevent
\NewDocumentCommand \chronoslegacyevent { 0 {} m 0 {} +m D () { \chronos@testun@yshift } }
{% #1 [<connection options>]
%
             #2 {<date>}
%
             #3 [<text tag options>]
%
            #4 {<text>}
%
             #5 (<yshift>)
      \chronosevent{%}
              date=#2,
              name=#4,
              yshift=#5,
              text tag+={#3},
              connection+={#1},
      }%
}
% END \chronoslegacyevent
% BEGIN \chronoslegacyperiod
\label{eq:linear} $$ NewDocumentCommand \chronoslegacyperiod { 0 {} m 0 {} m 0 {} m 0 {} thronos@testun@yshift $$ of the set of th
{% #1 [<line options>]
%
             #2 {<start date>}
             #3 [<connection options>]
%
%
             #4 {<end date>}
%
            #5 [<text tag options>]
%
             #6 {<text>}
%
              #7 (<yshift>)
      \chronosperiod{%
              start=#2,
              end=#4,
              name=#6,
              yshift=#7,
              connection+={#3},
              text tag+={\#5},
              line+={#1},
      }%
}
% END \chronoslegacyperiod
makeatother
```

This allows you to use \chronosevent and \chronosperiod with the key-value interface in new timelines.

# **Change History**

v0.7?	v0.9.3
General: First repo release. (Ish.) Earlier versions	General: Add at aux and line add yshift etc $61$
were published informally on TEX	Add at aux 68
StackExchange 105	Add line add yshift etc
v0.9	
General: First CTAN release	

 $^{52}$ The location isn't crucial in this case, provided the definitions are read before you use them and after **chronos** is loaded, but it is bad practice to define new commands in the body of documents.

# Index

Features are sorted by kind. Numbers written in bold italics refer to the pages containing the main descriptions of the corresponding entries. Numbers underlined refer to the code lines where the entries are defined. Upright numbers refer to pages containing additional comments, discussion or examples of usage or to line numbers for usage in the code<sup>53</sup>.  $\dagger$  indicates an example of usage.

#### Symbols

' (prime) 33, 3	34
'+ (prime-plus)	34
'- (prime-minus)	34
+ (plus)	32
- (minus)	8
/ (forward slash)	32
# (hash) 9	93
	33

### Α

arrow	tips																											1	0	2	2
-------	------	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	---	---	---	---

### В

BOOLEAN KEYS:	
$\langle tag \rangle$ /copyleft	<b>76</b>
as is	67
color rotation	<b>59</b>
colour rotation	<b>59</b>
connect	<b>68</b>
copyleft/copyleft	67
event dates split	<b>78</b>
event/as is	63
event/connect	63
event/place below	63
frame	
style	54
frame	<b>5</b> 3
frame uses bb	<b>5</b> 3
life/connect	61
no simple color names	<b>10</b>
no simple colour names	<b>10</b>
period/connect	64
phantom	71
place below	<b>69</b>
show bounding box	<b>98</b>
show coords	<b>98</b>
show nodes	<b>99</b>
simple color names	
Leslie Lamport†	63
simple color names <b>10</b> ,	<b>60</b>
simple colour names	
donald knuth†	58
Leslie Lamport†	63
simple colour names $\dots \dots \dots \dots 10$ ,	<b>60</b>

 $^{53}{\rm I}$  am grateful to David Carlisle and Ulrike Fischer for help with indexing at TeX StackExchange: 695555.

timeline/mark at era switch	40
timeline/minor years	47
timeline/timeline arrow	95
following chronos styles	94
use in blues below $\dagger$	89
timeline/timeline arrow	<b>5</b> 3
timeline/timeline bare marks	49
timeline/timeline mark eras	
effect of enabling explicitly vs. implicitly	
encer of encoming explicitly vo. implicitly	y on
show nodes	99
· - ·	99
show nodes	99
show nodes	99 <b>38</b>
show nodes timeline/timeline mark eras timeline/timeline marks	99 38 48 48
show nodes timeline/timeline mark eras timeline/timeline marks timeline/timeline minor marks	99 <b>38</b> 48 48 48 49
show nodes timeline/timeline mark eras timeline/timeline marks timeline/timeline minor marks timeline/timeline show years	99 <b>38</b> 48 48 48 49

### $\mathbf{C}$

-	
CHOICE KEYS:	
connections on	41
lines on	41
placeholders	
	54
	98
1	8
	41
	41
, <b>,</b>	90
	16
	16
	16
off line $\ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots 46, 10$	
	16
timeline/timeline years	6
CHRONOS STYLES:	
blues below	
example of	
	18
1 1	25
1	53
	29
	9
contemporary 90	18
	18 25
1 1	20 90
	29
5	29 1 <b>9</b>
contemporary 90 1	9

cronoleg	
colour rotation	
features (summary)	
in example timeline $\dagger$	5
sample output † $\dots$	20
use of cronoleg colour scheme	29
cronoleg	17
date centric	
development	1
features (summary)	18
sample output†	21
use of title lines	75
date centric	17
defining custom	88
event splitter	
development	1
features (summary)	
sample output <sup>†</sup>	28
event splitter	21
flipping blues	
features (summary)	18
sample output <sup>†</sup>	$\frac{10}{25}$
use of blues colour scheme	29
	29 19
flipping blueslavender menace	19
	18
features (summary)	-
sample output <sup>†</sup>	22
use of lavender colour scheme	29
	17
lines on line	4
development	
features (summary)	18
sample output <sup>†</sup>	28
use of conditional timeline arrow $\dagger$	95
lines on line	21
list of	18
loading a colour scheme	92
modern	
features (summary)	18
quadrupling of hashes in	93
sample output†	22
use of modern colour scheme	29
use of custom colour scheme in	92
use of public colour names in	92
modern	17
modifying	54
no-year	21
event splitter†	21
lines on line <sup>†</sup>	21
plain arrow <sup>†</sup>	$\overline{24}$
off line	19
blues below <sup>†</sup>	
contemporary 90 <sup>†</sup>	10
	19 19
	19
flipping bluest	19 19
	19

off line simple†	21
rotated 45†	21
simple arrow†	21
somewhat plain†	21
off line colour	
features (summary)	18
sample output <sup>†</sup>	26
use of offlinebasic colour scheme	29
off line colour	<b>19</b>
off line colour alt	
features (summary)	18
sample output <sup>†</sup>	26
use of offlinealt colour scheme	29
off line colour alt	<b>19</b>
off line simple	
development	1
features (summary)	18
sample output <sup>†</sup>	27
use of offlinebasic colour scheme	29
off line simple	21
on line	17
cronoleg <sup>†</sup>	17
date centric†	17
lavender menace†	17
modern†	
rainbow serif†	
serif on line <sup>†</sup>	
sober judge <sup>†</sup>	
plain arrow	
doubling of hashes in	93
features (summary)	18
sample output†	28
plain arrow	24
rainbow serif	
features (summary)	18
sample output <sup>†</sup>	23
use of xcolseries colour scheme	29
rainbow serif	17
rotated 45	
features (summary)	18
sample output <sup>†</sup>	27
use of default colour scheme	29
rotated 45	21
serif on line	
features (summary)	18
sample output <sup>†</sup>	23
use of default colour scheme	29
serif on line	17
simple arrow	- •
features (summary)	18
sample output <sup>†</sup>	27
simple arrow	21
sober judge	
features (summary)	18
sample output <sup>†</sup>	24
use of sobriety colour scheme	29
and of poptiety colour scheme	20

sober judge	17
somewhat plain	
features (summary)	18
sample output <sup>†</sup>	28
use of default colour scheme	29
use of title lines	75
somewhat plain	21
using	29
CLASSES:	
happyholidays.cls	1
Colour keys:	
$\langle tag  angle$ /default color	77
$\langle tag  angle$ /default colour	77
background	52
background	40
color	<i>68</i>
colour 69.	77
in assignment of colour names	58
colour	<i>68</i>
event/default color	57
event/default colour	57
foreground 52,	57
foreground	40
info/default color	57
info/default colour	57
life/default color	57
life/default colour	57
period/default color	57
period/default colour	57
should not be set by	90
show bb color	<b>99</b>
show bb colour	<i>99</i>
show coordinate color	<i>99</i>
show coordinate colour	<i>99</i>
show node color	<i>99</i>
show node colour	<i>99</i>
$\langle tag \rangle$ /default colour	00
applying to elements	69
in assignment of colour names	58
setting vs. using	77
theory/default color	57
theory/default colour	57
timeline/timeline background	52
timeline/timeline border inner color	51
timeline/timeline border inner colour	51
timeline/timeline border middle color	51
timeline/timeline border middle colour	01
illegitimacy of definition in chronos style <sup>†</sup>	92
timeline/timeline border middle colour	
	•
timeline/timeline border outer color	51
timeline/timeline border outer colour	51
timeline/timeline foreground	52
Colour LIST KEYS:	52
colors above	59
colors below	59

colours above	<b>59</b>
colours below	<i>59</i>
event/colors above	<b>60</b>
event/colors below	<b>60</b>
event/colours above	<b>60</b>
event/colours below	<b>60</b>
life/colors above	<b>60</b>
life/colors below	<b>60</b>
life/colours above	<b>60</b>
life/colours below	<b>60</b>
period/colors above	<u>60</u>
_ period/colors below	<u>60</u>
period/colours above	<u>60</u>
period/colours below	<u>60</u>
COLOUR LISTS:	
should not be set by	90
when to configure	30
Colour scheme keys:	
background	91
default above	91
default below	91
event/above	91
event/below	91
event/default	91
colour derivation	88
foreground	91
info/default	91
colour derivation	88
life/above	91
life/below	91
life/default	91
colour derivation	88
period/above	91
period/below	91 91
period/default	91 91
colour derivation	88
processing	00
background	88
event/default	88
	88
5	88
•	00 88
-	
theory/default	88
timeline background	88
timeline border inner	88
timeline border middle	88
timeline border outer	88
timeline foreground	88
processing (delayed)	00
timeline background	88
timeline foreground	88
theory/above	91 01
theory/below	91
theory/default	91
colour derivation	88
timeline background	91
colour derivation	88
--	----------------------
timeline border inner	91
colour derivation	88
timeline border middle	91
colour derivation	88
timeline border outer	91
colour derivation	88
timeline foreground	91
colour derivation	88
Colour schemes:	
blues	29
as instance of custom <sup>†</sup>	86
definition	86
use by blues below	18
use by flipping blues	18
colour names	91
contninety	29
as example of minimal modification to supp	
chronos styles	86
as instance of custom <sup>†</sup>	86
use by contemporary 90	18
creating	10
ő	87
options (summary)cronoleg	29
	29 86
as instance of custom <sup>†</sup>	
implementation internal	86
use by cronoleg	18
default	•1
modification will not cause memoize recomp	
tion	
defining custom	86
lavender	29
as instance of custom <sup>†</sup>	86
use by lavender menace	18
list of	29
modern	29
as example of minimal modification to supp	
chronos styles	
as instance of custom <sup>†</sup>	86
use by modern	18
offlinealt	29
as example of minimal modification to supp	
chronos styles	86
as instance of custom † $\ldots$	86
sufficient to define deviations from $\langle exist$	ing
$scheme \rangle$	86
use by off line colour alt	18
offlinebasic	29
as example of minimal modification to supp	$\operatorname{ort}$
chronos styles	86
as instance of $custom^{\dagger}$	86
use by off line colour	18
use by off line simple	18
sobriety	29
as instance of custom <sup>†</sup>	86
xcolseries	29

as instance of custom $\dagger$	86
	18
use of colour series	86
COLOURS:	
$\langle name \rangle$	59
8	58
	83
assignment by chronos	58
chronos current tag color	
	59
chronos current tag color	59
chronos current tag colour	
outside tag contexts	59
chronos current tag colour	<i>59</i>
chronos main background color	40
chronos main background colour	40
use in chronos styles	40
chronos main color	40
chronos main colour	40
as tag default	57
chronos current tag colour as equivalen	t to
outside tag contexts	59
use in chronos styles	40
chronos timeline background colour	90
chronos timeline border inner colour	92
chronos timeline border outer colour	92
chronos timeline foreground colour	90
	<b>58</b>
color leslie lamport $\dagger$	63
	58
colour leslie lamport†	63
colour name	58
configuration	57
core	91
core border	91
core derivative	91
current tag	59
default	30
elemental	91
in tag context	59
leslie lamport $\dagger$	63
names	
assigned	58
simple colour names	
disabling	10
use in chronos connect	83
use in chronos create chronos connector	83
$\mathrm{use}~\mathrm{in}$ chronos create text tag connector	
use in chronos mark line $\ldots$	83
use in chronos text tag $\ldots$	83
use in keys	79
using	58
using directly	83
white	90
	10

Comma-separated list keys:	
century subheadings	56
century subheadings+	56
century subheadings'	56
chronos coords	
to add coordinates for headings, subheadings	
century subheadings	57
chronos coords	55
headings	55
headings+	55
headings'	55
subheadings	55
subheadings+	55
subheadings'	55
CONCEPTS:	
$\langle chronos \ preamble \rangle \ \dots \ \dots \ 11$	, 43
setting normally local keys in	67
chronos style	. 17
authors should never use timeline config	5'
colour list	59
colour assignment from	58
rotation	58
colour rotation	58
breaking	94
Donald Knuth <sup>†</sup>	. 7
effect of colour rotation key	59
hashes essential	94
in assignment of colour names	58
colour scheme	29
as customisation	57
load existing	24
using	24
element	12
additional $\ldots \ldots 10$	12
capitalisation, preventing	<i>'</i>
colour to assign	
colour assignment to	
components of life and period	63
components of event	64
components of theory	65
components of copyleft and copyright	67
components of info	66
components of main	66
components of theory circle	65
connectable	14
connection points	68
global colour configuration	77
names of colours assigned to	58
non-connectable	14
placement of coordinate jikji†	. 6
specified in (chronos preamble)	. 0
timeline-connectable	14
tag	
colour assignment to elements	58
coordinate names	15
	10

custom styles
effect on \chronosshowfeatures 100
fallback colour, problems
global defaults for all
hashes essential
in key specifications 32
node names $\dots \dots \dots$
prefix required
prefix, influence on configuration 74
support for connectors $\dots \dots \dots \dots \dots \dots 9$
theory circle
use default colour assigned to elements be-
longing to
timeline $\ldots$ $11$
combining package and T <sub>E</sub> X SE code in single
document $\dots \dots \dots$
combining package and T <sub>E</sub> X SE code in single
document with legacy names 104
combining package and T <sub>F</sub> X SE code in single
document with minimal changes $\dots$ 104
completed using T <sub>F</sub> X SE code 103
connectors
elements, additional, connectable 14
elements, additional, non-timeline-connectable
elements, $additional$ , timeline-connectable 14, 14
updating from T <sub>E</sub> X SE code $\dots \dots \dots$
updating with retained $T_{FX}$ SE code 103
$\langle timeline \ additions \ specification \rangle  \dots  12$
$\langle timeline \ specification \rangle  .  11, 43, 44, 44, 70, 74$
COORDINATES:
(chronos origin) 67
chronos origin 48
default placement of theory
chronos origin 48
chronos year - $\langle YYYY \rangle$
chronos year 0 $\ldots$ $48$
chronos year $\langle YYYY \rangle$ 48
leslie lamport† 61
$\langle name \rangle$
as component of life and period 63
$\langle name \rangle$ 1
as component of theory circle $\dots \dots \dots$
D
DATE FORMAT KEYS:
$\langle tag \rangle$ /date format

date format35event/date format35event/show eras/full36event/show eras/only years36event/without eras/full36event/without eras/full36event/without eras/only years36event/without eras/only years36every date format37life/date formats36

life/show eras/full	36
	37
5 5	37
	37
5 5	38
5	36
<b>1</b>	36 36
1 5 5	37
1 .	37
1 5 5	37
year format	37
Date keys:	
birth	70
date	
effect of event dates split on use of	78
-	70
dates	
whether to define in chronos styles	89
	70
death	10
	7
omission for living	
	70 70
	70
event/date 63,	
life/birth	61
life/death	61
period/dates	
as mandatory for completed	64
period/end	
as mandatory for completed	64
period/start	
as mandatory for completed	64
as mandatory for ongoing	64
	70
timeline/dates	41
	$\frac{41}{42}$
	-
timeline/end date	57
	42
	42
	42
DIMENSION KEYS:	
	33
( e /	33
$\langle dimension \ key \rangle$	33
	33
$\langle dimension   key \rangle' - \dots \dots \dots \dots$	34
$\langle dimension \ key \rangle$ '	33
	45
	$\frac{40}{45}$
	40 45
	-
	45
	44
	44
	45
•	45
headings'	45

left border	45
line add yshift $\ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots 68$ ,	74
line add yshift	70
line add yshift+	70
line add yshift	70
line add yshift'	70
line yshift	70
line yshift	74
line yshift+	74
line yshift	74
line yshift'	74
outer border	45
right border	45
sizes	72
subheadings drops	45
text tag yshift	67
text tag yshift	<b>81</b>
timeline	
timeline width	53
timeline	
timeline era margin	94
timeline margin	94
timeline width	
as total width	42
timeline/height	43
timeline/timeline border height	43
timeline/timeline era margin	44
timeline/timeline height $\ldots \ldots \ldots 1$	00
finalised before timeline/do timeline arro	ЭW
$\dots \dots 95$	
timeline/timeline height	43
timeline/timeline margin	44
timeline/timeline width	96
adjustments for arrow tips and line caps .	94
timeline/timeline width	44
timeline/width	44
	45
	33

#### $\mathbf{E}$

ELEMENTS:
additional
and colour rotation $\dots \dots \dots$
connectable $\dots \dots \dots$
non-connectable $\dots \dots \dots$
phantoms
primary 14
secondary (sub-) $\ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots 15$
timeline-connectable 12
bare marks 49
placement 12
setting 48
border
using to change appearance of connectors $.41$
capitalisation of name
caption 14

stylecentury subheadings	75
ensuring required coordinates exist	57
chronos connector 14, 41, 63,	75
as component of life	63
as component of <b>period</b>	63
as component of event	64
configuring global defaults	79
style, using directly	83
use of colour leslie lamport in the second s	63
chronos coordinates	
cf. levels	55
help with placement	54
chronos tikz	
outer border†	85
chronos tikz outside bb	
outer border†	85
colour	
cf. every $\langle tag \rangle$	82
connected element	21
connection	74
chronos support for	8
absent in phantoms	71
adding between text tags	85
adding with chronos connect for johann	
gutenberg <sup>†</sup>	83
and colour rotation	58
as component of life	63
as component of $period$	63
as component of periodas component of event	$\begin{array}{c} 63 \\ 64 \end{array}$
as component of periodas component of eventbetween chronos connectors and text tag connectors	$\begin{array}{c} 63 \\ 64 \end{array}$
as component of period as component of event between chronos connectors and text tag connectors	63 64 ect- 14
as component of periodas component of eventbetween chronos connectors and text tag connectorsbetween johannes gutenberg and other of	63 64 ect- 14 ele-
as component of period as component of event between chronos connectors and text tag conne ors between johannes gutenberg and other of ments <sup>†</sup>	63 64 ect- 14 ele- 83
as component of period as component of event between chronos connectors and text tag connectors ors between johannes gutenberg and other of ments† cf. every $\langle tag \rangle$	63 64 ect- 14 ele- 83 82
<pre>as component of period</pre>	63 64 ect- 14 ele- 83 82 79
<ul> <li>as component of period</li> <li>as component of event</li> <li>between chronos connectors and text tag connectors and text tag connectors</li> <li>between johannes gutenberg and other of ments†</li> <li>cf. every (tag)</li> <li>configuring global defaults</li> <li>connectors as facilitating connections to theorem</li> </ul>	63 64 ect- 14 ele- 83 82 79
as component of period as component of event between chronos connectors and text tag connectors ors between johannes gutenberg and other of ments† cf. every $\langle tag \rangle$ configuring global defaults connectors as facilitating connections to theori 	63 64 ect- 14 ele- 83 82 79 es
<pre>as component of period</pre>	63 64 ect- 14 ele- 83 82 79 es 7
<pre>as component of period</pre>	63 64 ect- 14 ele- 83 82 79 es 7 40
<pre>as component of period</pre>	63 64 ect- 14 ele- 83 82 79 es 7 40 32
<pre>as component of period</pre>	63 64 eet- 14 eee- 83 82 79 es 7 40 32 58
<pre>as component of period</pre>	63 64 ect- 14 ele- 83 82 79 es 7 40 32 58 41
<pre>as component of period</pre>	63 64 ect- 14 83 82 79 es 7 40 32 58 41 19
<pre>as component of period</pre>	63 64 ect- 14 ele- 83 82 79 es 7 40 32 58 41 19 19
as component of period	63 64 ect- 14 83 82 79 es 7 40 32 58 41 19 19 83
<pre>as component of period</pre>	63 64 ect- 14 ele- 83 82 79 es 7 40 32 58 41 19 19 83 6
<pre>as component of period</pre>	63 64 ect- 14 ele- 83 82 79 es 7 40 32 58 41 19 19 83 6 63
<pre>as component of period</pre>	63 64 ect- 14 ele- 83 82 79 es 7 40 32 58 41 19 19 83 6
<pre>as component of period</pre>	63 64 ect-14 ele- 83 82 79 es 7 40 32 58 41 19 19 83 63 63
<pre>as component of period</pre>	63 64 ect- 14 ele- 83 82 79 es 7 40 32 58 41 19 19 83 63 63 8
<pre>as component of period</pre>	63 64 ect- 14 ele- 83 82 79 es 7 40 32 58 41 19 19 83 63 63 63 82
<pre>as component of period</pre>	63 64 ect- 14 ele- 83 82 79 es 7 40 32 58 41 19 19 83 63 63 63 82 63 82 6
as component of period	63 64 ect- 14 ele- 83 82 79 es 7 40 32 58 41 19 19 83 63 63 63 882 63 882 63 882 63
<pre>as component of period</pre>	63 64 ect- 14 ele- 83 82 79 es 7 40 32 58 41 19 19 83 63 63 63 82 63 82 6

elements which support	
J J J	6
/ 0	75
1 0 5	65
	9
tags lacking support for	9
connectors	
use of name in	67
copyleft	
copyleft	14
copyright	14
style $\ldots$	78
copyright	
copyleft	14
copyright	14
	78
date format	
cf. every $\langle tag \rangle$	82
default colour	
	69
documentation	
timeline	5
era label	Ŭ
	12
	14
	63
•	46
5	
introduction to	
	14
	6
frame	~~
0	85
0 0	85
	85
	45
	45
	14
cronoleg as not using bounding box for <sup>†</sup>	17
determinants of configuration	12
if not using bounding box	45
introduction to	5
heading	55
headings	
adding code after 85,	85
	85
0	85
0	12
	57
introduction to	5
	$12^{-3}$
-	44
F	
1	
	45
purpose	$45 \\ 9$
style configuration	45 9 57
style configuration	45 9 57 56
style configuration	$45 \\ 9 \\ 57$

without upper/lower subheadings	45
info	14
introduction to	5
johannes gutenberg¦ label	83
common style for upper and lower $\ldots$ .	75
labels	14
style	75
layer	
effect of placing elements on different $\ldots$	41
levels	54
cf. chronos coordinates	55
$cronoleg^{\dagger}$	17
help with placement	54
placement	44
life	14
connection	61
connectors	61
introduction to	5
representation of temporarl extention $\ldots$	74
text tag 7	7, 8
line	
and colour rotation	58
as component of life	63
as component of period $\ldots$	63
as component of event $\ldots$	64
as representation of time	14
at aux	68
blues below $\dagger$	19
cf. every $\langle tag \rangle$	82
configuring global defaults	79
default use of chronos main colour in $% \mathcal{A}$ .	40
effect of drawing on different layers	41
Fall of theRoman Empire†	64
lines on line $\dagger$	21
phantoms	71
plain arrow†	24
representation of time in life/period $\ldots$	14
rotated 45†	21
style	74
style, using directly	83
use of colour leslie lamport in†	63
lower subheadings	4 5
as only subheadings	45
placement	45
placement relative to upper subheadings . main	12
	14
	14
main title as lacking connectors	9
	68
anchor as component of life	08 63
as component of period	03 63
as component of period	64
connection	74
	1.1

main connector always created	69
main title	
as secondary <sup>†</sup>	14
	5
somewhat plain†	21
style	75
title lines	75
	49
major year	10
at era switch†	47
marks	49
	48
name	40
common configuration	50
	48
dependent on modulo year	-
dividing with bare marks	48
font	50
frequency of labelling	47
labelled year modulo†	47
labelled year non-modulo†	47
labelling as prerequisite for minor year labels	47
$millennium^{\dagger}$	47
non-modulo start date † $\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots$	47
recommended when using step minor year	47
setting marks	48
style differentiated from	48
style in common with	48
years modulo <i>vs.</i> non-modulo†	47
marks	
adjusting chronos style defaults	17
adjusting chronos style defaults	
effect of non-modulo year	48
effect of non-modulo year in simple arrow†	$\frac{48}{21}$
effect of non-modulo year         in simple arrow†         in example timeline†	48 21 5
effect of non-modulo year in simple arrow† in example timeline† placement	$48 \\ 21 \\ 5 \\ 12$
effect of non-modulo yearin simple arrow†in example timeline†placementstyle for minor years	48 21 5 12 47
effect of non-modulo yearin simple arrow†in example timeline†placementstyle for minor yearsusing different styles for	$48 \\ 21 \\ 5 \\ 12$
effect of non-modulo year in simple arrow <sup>†</sup> in example timeline <sup>†</sup> placement style for minor years using different styles for minor marks	48 21 5 12 47 47
effect of non-modulo year in simple arrow <sup>†</sup> in example timeline <sup>†</sup> placement style for minor years using different styles for minor marks placement	$     \begin{array}{r}       48 \\       21 \\       5 \\       12 \\       47 \\       47 \\       12 \\       12     $
effect of non-modulo year in simple arrow <sup>†</sup> in example timeline <sup>†</sup> placement style for minor years using different styles for minor marks placement minor steps	$48 \\ 21 \\ 5 \\ 12 \\ 47 \\ 47 \\ 12 \\ 46$
effect of non-modulo year in simple arrow <sup>†</sup> in example timeline <sup>†</sup> placement style for minor years using different styles for minor marks placement minor steps marks at	$ \begin{array}{r} 48\\21\\5\\12\\47\\47\\12\\46\\49\end{array} $
effect of non-modulo year in simple arrow <sup>†</sup> in example timeline <sup>†</sup> placement style for minor years using different styles for minor marks placement minor steps marks at minor year	$\begin{array}{c} 48\\ 21\\ 5\\ 12\\ 47\\ 47\\ 12\\ 46\\ 49\\ 49\\ 49\\ \end{array}$
effect of non-modulo year in simple arrow† in example timeline† placement style for minor years using different styles for minor marks placement minor steps marks at half millennium†	$\begin{array}{c} 48\\ 21\\ 5\\ 12\\ 47\\ 47\\ 12\\ 46\\ 49\\ 49\\ 47\\ \end{array}$
effect of non-modulo year	$\begin{array}{c} 48\\ 21\\ 5\\ 12\\ 47\\ 47\\ 12\\ 46\\ 49\\ 49\\ 49\\ \end{array}$
effect of non-modulo year	$\begin{array}{c} 48\\ 21\\ 5\\ 12\\ 47\\ 47\\ 12\\ 46\\ 49\\ 47\\ 48\\ \end{array}$
effect of non-modulo year	$\begin{array}{c} 48\\ 21\\ 5\\ 12\\ 47\\ 47\\ 12\\ 46\\ 49\\ 49\\ 47\\ 48\\ 50\\ \end{array}$
effect of non-modulo year in simple arrowt placement style for minor years using different styles for minor marks placement marks at marks at half millenniumt name minor years common configuration	$\begin{array}{c} 48\\ 21\\ 5\\ 12\\ 47\\ 47\\ 12\\ 46\\ 49\\ 49\\ 47\\ 48\\ 50\\ 48\\ \end{array}$
effect of non-modulo year in simple arrow <sup>†</sup> placement style for minor years using different styles for minor marks placement marks at marks at half millennium <sup>†</sup> name minor years common configuration dividing with bare marks	$\begin{array}{c} 48\\ 21\\ 5\\ 12\\ 47\\ 47\\ 12\\ 46\\ 49\\ 49\\ 47\\ 48\\ 50\\ 48\\ 50\end{array}$
effect of non-modulo year in simple arrow <sup>†</sup> placement style for minor years using different styles for minor marks placement minor steps marks at half millennium <sup>†</sup> name minor years common configuration dividing with bare marks font frequency of labelling	$\begin{array}{c} 48\\ 21\\ 5\\ 12\\ 47\\ 47\\ 12\\ 46\\ 49\\ 49\\ 49\\ 47\\ 48\\ 50\\ 48\\ 50\\ 47\\ \end{array}$
effect of non-modulo year in simple arrow† placement style for minor years using different styles for minor marks placement minor steps marks at half millennium† half millennium† name minor years common configuration dividing with bare marks font frequency of labelling	$\begin{array}{c} 48\\ 21\\ 5\\ 12\\ 47\\ 47\\ 12\\ 46\\ 49\\ 49\\ 47\\ 48\\ 50\\ 48\\ 50\\ 47\\ 47\end{array}$
effect of non-modulo year         in simple arrow†         in example timeline†         placement         style for minor years         using different styles for         minor marks         placement         minor steps         marks at         minor year         half millennium†         name         common configuration         dividing with bare marks         font         frequency of labelling         labelled year modulo†	$\begin{array}{c} 48\\ 21\\ 5\\ 12\\ 47\\ 47\\ 12\\ 46\\ 49\\ 49\\ 49\\ 47\\ 48\\ 50\\ 48\\ 50\\ 47\\ \end{array}$
effect of non-modulo year         in simple arrow†         in example timeline†         placement         style for minor years         using different styles for         minor marks         placement         minor steps         marks at         minor years         half millennium†         name         minor years         common configuration         dividing with bare marks         font         frequency of labelling         labelled year non-modulo†         labelled only if labelling major years	$\begin{array}{c} 48\\ 21\\ 5\\ 12\\ 47\\ 47\\ 12\\ 46\\ 49\\ 49\\ 47\\ 48\\ 50\\ 47\\ 47\\ 47\\ 47\\ 47\end{array}$
effect of non-modulo year	$\begin{array}{c} 48\\ 21\\ 5\\ 12\\ 47\\ 47\\ 12\\ 46\\ 49\\ 49\\ 47\\ 48\\ 50\\ 47\\ 47\\ 47\\ 47\end{array}$
effect of non-modulo year         in simple arrow†         in example timeline†         placement         style for minor years         using different styles for         minor marks         placement         minor steps         marks at         minor year         half millennium†         name         common configuration         dividing with bare marks         font         frequency of labelling         labelled year non-modulo†         labelled only if labelling major years         non-modulo start date†	$\begin{array}{c} 48\\ 21\\ 5\\ 12\\ 47\\ 47\\ 12\\ 46\\ 49\\ 49\\ 47\\ 48\\ 50\\ 47\\ 47\\ 47\\ 47\\ 47\end{array}$
effect of non-modulo year	$\begin{array}{c} 48\\ 21\\ 5\\ 12\\ 47\\ 47\\ 12\\ 46\\ 49\\ 49\\ 47\\ 48\\ 50\\ 47\\ 47\\ 47\\ 47\\ 47\\ 47\end{array}$
effect of non-modulo year         in simple arrow†         in example timeline†         placement         style for minor years         using different styles for         minor marks         placement         minor steps         marks at         minor year         half millennium†         name         common configuration         dividing with bare marks         font         frequency of labelling         labelled year non-modulo†         labelled only if labelling major years         non-modulo start date†	$\begin{array}{c} 48\\ 21\\ 5\\ 12\\ 47\\ 47\\ 12\\ 46\\ 49\\ 49\\ 47\\ 48\\ 50\\ 47\\ 47\\ 47\\ 47\\ 47\\ 12\\ \end{array}$
effect of non-modulo year in simple arrow† placement style for minor years using different styles for minor marks placement minor steps marks at half millennium† name minor years common configuration dividing with bare marks font frequency of labelling labelled year modulo† labelled only if labelling major years non-modulo start date† setting minor marks	$\begin{array}{r} 48\\ 21\\ 5\\ 12\\ 47\\ 47\\ 12\\ 46\\ 49\\ 49\\ 47\\ 48\\ 50\\ 47\\ 47\\ 47\\ 47\\ 12\\ 49\\ \end{array}$

whether to label	47
years modulo <i>vs.</i> non-modulo†	47
naming	67
period	14
introduction to	5
representation of temporarl extention	74
	• -
text tag connector	64
period/text tag	8
placement	67
step divisions	
common configuration	50
step minor year	
attempted correction if specified without ma	aior
years	47
subheading	56
	56
century subheadings	~ ~
subheadings	33
adding code after $\dots \dots \dots$	85
adding code after outside bounding box $\$ .	85
determinants of configuration	12
ensuring required coordinates exist	57
introduction to	5
placement	45
placement relative to headings	12
	9
purpose	
style configuration	57
use of keys to create <sup>†</sup>	56
without headings	45
$\langle tag \rangle$ /connection	15
$\langle tag \rangle$ /connector	15
$\langle tag \rangle$ /line	15
$\langle tag \rangle / text tag \dots$	15
assigned colour passed to	58
chronos connect	83
date content in event	70
	• •
date content in life/period	70
$\operatorname{in} \operatorname{timeline}^{\dagger}$	5
rotated	21
$rotated^{\dagger}$	21
text	
date content in life/period	70
text tag	15
absent in phantoms	71
addition of connectors in Donald Knuth <sup>†</sup> .	8
and colour rotation	58
apply arbitrary $TikZ$ to $\ldots$	74
as component of info	66
-	
as component of life	63
as component of period	63
as component of theory	65
as component of event	64
at aux	68
cf. every $\langle tag \rangle$	82
configuration specific to main connector .	75
configuring global defaults	79
connection	74
	11

connection points
custom style using chronos keys <sup>†</sup> 96
date content in event
default use of chronos main colour in . 40
Donald Knuth <sup>†</sup>
event dates split 78
font, date(s) $\dots \dots \dots$
font, text
holistic treatment of configuration 79
introduction 14
lines on line† 21
main connector, identifying
0
plain arrow† 24
purpose
shifted right $\dot{1}$
sober judge $\dagger$
stacking $\ldots \ldots 54$
style, using directly 83
tag gutenberg bible† 83
tag johannes gutenberg <sup>†</sup> 83
0 51 1
tag printing press† 83
text tag date formatting 37, 37
title lines 75
use of name in 67
use of colour leslie lamport in $\ddagger$ 63
text tag connector 14
additional configuration for main 75
as component of life
as component of period
1 1
as component of event
configuration
configuring global defaults 80, 80
creation for theories $\ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots 64$
johannes gutenberg† 83
not feature of non-connectable elements $\dots$ 14
potential invisibility 65
style, using directly 83
use of colour leslie lamport in† 63
text tag connectors
theory
connecting individual to multiple 9
introduction to 5
theory $\ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots 14$
theory circle
create element of type 65
introduction to
lack of text tag 15
timeline
$\langle timeline additions specification \rangle \dots 12$
BCE label 38
CE label 38
absence of <b>borders</b> in off-line
additional elements $\ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots 61$
additional elements, connectable $\ldots \ldots 64$

additional elements, non-connectable $\ \ldots \ 65$
additional elements, timeline-connectable $.61$
additional configuration 85
anatomy 12
as location of line 61
as location of leslie lamport <sup>†</sup> 61
bare marks 49
borders 12
chronos origin dependant on era switch 48
chronos year \chronosyeari 92
chronos does not draw vertical 4
chronos draws horizontal 4
colours
colours for, derivation of
colours, further processing changes 90
colours, reason not to set in chronos style 92
colours, reason to avoid hard-coding 94
compatibility 102
1 0
-
configuration keys 41
configuration, timeline line 53
configuration, further processing 90
configuration, main key 41
connections 14
connections $\dots \dots \dots$
connections and lines $\dots \dots \dots$
connections, complex $\ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots 63$
connectors $\ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots 15, 63$
construction 4
coordinates 55
coordinates for unrepresented year 57
coordinates, creating additional 55
creation of complex
customisation
date, first
date, last 42
dates 41
densely packed 54
densely packed, non-standard paths 83
densely packed, use of space in 69
dimensions
dimensions responsible for total size 12
Donald Knuth <sup>†</sup>
effect of borders on dimensions 12
era labels
era margins
era switch
5
font
height
history of writing and printing $\dagger$
identifying explicit choices 100
if no year zero 39
independent of earlier 30
introduction to 5

key-value interface 10	)5
	54
	54
	55
limitations of chronos	4
lines 14, 1	_
	47
	44
	44 48
	±0 45
	±9
	±9 49
	±9 47
- J	47 6
T	-
placement of bi sheng <sup>†</sup>	7
1 5 5	6
	38
	46
	47
	99
i i j i i j i i i j i i i i j i i i i i	50
1 0	38
split and unsplit events, combining in sam	ne
the second second process of the second seco	78
split and unsplit events, combining in same do	oc-
$\operatorname{ument}$	78
•	48
style	52
styles, event years on line 4	46
styles, marks and years 4	46
	-
styles, marks and years, none $\ldots \ldots \ldots 4$	46
styles, marks and years, none 4 styles, marks and years, on line 4	46 46
styles, marks and years, none       4         styles, marks and years, on line       4         styles, off line       4	46 46 46
styles, marks and years, none       4         styles, marks and years, on line       4         styles, off line       4         styles, on line       4	46 46 46 45
styles, marks and years, none       4         styles, marks and years, on line       4         styles, off line       4         styles, on line       4	46 46 46 45 45
styles, marks and years, none       4         styles, marks and years, on line       4         styles, off line       4         styles, on line vs. off line       4         timeline border       4         timeline line       4	46 46 46 45 45 45 45 53 52
styles, marks and years, none       4         styles, marks and years, on line       4         styles, off line       4         styles, on line vs. off line       4         timeline border       4	46 46 46 45 45 45 45 53 52
styles, marks and years, none       4         styles, marks and years, on line       4         styles, off line       4         styles, on line vs. off line       4         timeline border       4         timeline line       4	46 46 46 45 45 45 53 52 nt
styles, marks and years, none       4         styles, marks and years, on line       4         styles, off line       4         styles, on line       4         styles, off line       4         styles, on line       4	46 46 46 45 45 45 53 52 nt 42
styles, marks and years, none       4         styles, marks and years, on line       4         styles, off line       4         styles, on line       4         timeline       4         timeline       4         total       4         and       5         and       4	46 46 45 45 45 53 52 at 42 44
styles, marks and years, none       4         styles, marks and years, on line       4         styles, off line       4         styles, on line       4         styles, on line       4         styles, on line       4         styles, on line vs. off line       4         timeline border       4         timeline line       4         total height as function of timeline height       4         total width       4	46 46 45 45 45 53 52 nt 42 44 3
styles, marks and years, none       4         styles, marks and years, on line       4         styles, off line       4         styles, on line       4         styles, on line       4         styles, on line vs. off line       4         styles, on line vs. off line       4         styles, on line vs. off line       4         timeline border       4         total height as function of timeline height       4         total width       4         types drawn by chronos       4         updating from TEX SE code       10	46 46 45 45 45 53 52 nt 42 44 3
styles, marks and years, none       4         styles, marks and years, on line       4         styles, off line       4         styles, on line       4         styles, on line       4         styles, on line vs. off line       4         timeline border       4         timeline line       4         total height as function of timeline height       4         total width       4         types drawn by chronos       4         updating from TEX SE code       10         weird \chronosyeari in chronos style       6	46 46 45 45 52 42 44 3 03
styles, marks and years, none       4         styles, marks and years, on line       4         styles, off line       4         styles, on line       4         styles, on line       4         styles, on line vs. off line       4         timeline border       4         timeline line       5         total height as function of timeline height       4         total width       4         types drawn by chronos       4         updating from TEX SE code       10         weird \chronosyeari in chronos style       4	46 46 45 45 52 52 12 44 30 22 42
styles, marks and years, none       4         styles, marks and years, on line       4         styles, off line       4         styles, on line       4         styles, on line vs. off line       4         styles, on line vs. off line       4         styles, on line vs. off line       4         timeline border       4         timeline line       5         total height as function of timeline height       4         total width       4         types drawn by chronos       10         weird \chronosyeari in chronos style       4         years       47, 4	46 46 45 45 45 52 12 44 30 32 42 44 30 22 42
styles, marks and years, none       4         styles, marks and years, on line       4         styles, off line       4         styles, on line       4         styles, on line vs. off line       4         timeline border       5         timeline line       6         total height as function of timeline height       4         total width       4         types drawn by chronos       10         weird \chronosyeari in chronos style       4         years       47, 4         years, modulo       47, 4	46 46 45 45 45 52 12 44 30 32 42 44 30 22 42
styles, marks and years, none       4         styles, marks and years, on line       4         styles, off line       4         styles, on line       4         styles, on line vs. off line       4         timeline border       5         total height as function of timeline height       4         total width       4         types drawn by chronos       4         updating from TEX SE code       10         width       47, 4         years       47, 4         years, modulo       47, 4         years, not modulo       47, 4	46 46 45 45 53 52 42 44 30 22 42 49 48
styles, marks and years, none4styles, marks and years, on line4styles, off line4styles, on line4styles, on line vs. off line4timeline border4timeline line5total height as function of timeline height4and timeline border height4total width4types drawn by chronos10weird \chronosyeari in chronos style4years, modulo47, 4years, not modulo47, 4years, style4	46 46 45 45 52 12 44 30 22 42 49 48 47
styles, marks and years, none       4         styles, marks and years, on line       4         styles, off line       4         styles, on line       4         styles, on line vs. off line       4         styles, on line vs. off line       4         timeline border       4         timeline line       5         total height as function of timeline height       4         total width       4         types drawn by chronos       4         updating from TEX SE code       10         width       47, 4         years, modulo       47, 4         years, style       4         years, anchor       4	16 16 16 15 15 52 12 12 14 30 22 19 18 47 18
styles, marks and years, none       4         styles, marks and years, on line       4         styles, off line       4         styles, on line ws. off line       4         styles, on line vs. off line       4         timeline border       5         total height as function of timeline height       6         total width       4         types drawn by chronos       10         weird \chronosyeari in chronos style       4         years, modulo       47, 4         years, style       4         years, anchor       4         years, major, format       4	46 46 45 45 52 42 43 30 22 49 48 47 48 48 48 38
styles, marks and years, none       4         styles, marks and years, on line       4         styles, off line       4         styles, on line vs. off line       4         styles, on line vs. off line       4         styles, on line vs. off line       4         timeline border       5         timeline line       5         total height as function of timeline height       6         total width       4         types drawn by chronos       10         weird \chronosyeari in chronos style       4         years, modulo       47, 4         years, style       4         years, anchor       4         years, major, format       6	46 46 45 45 52 42 43 30 22 49 48 47 48 48 48 38
styles, marks and years, none       4         styles, off line       4         styles, on line       4         styles, on line vs. off line       4         timeline border       5         total height as function of timeline height       4         total width       4         types drawn by chronos       4         updating from TEX SE code       10         weird \chronosyeari in chronos style       4         years, modulo       47, 4         years, not modulo       4         years, style       4         years, major, format       4         as location of line       86, 9	46 46 46 45 55 2 12 44 30 22 49 48 48 88 23
styles, marks and years, none       4         styles, off line       4         styles, on line       4         styles, on line       4         styles, on line vs. off line       4         timeline border       5         total height as function of timeline height       4         total width       4         types drawn by chronos       4         updating from TEX SE code       10         weird \chronosyeari in chronos style       4         years, modulo       47, 4         years, not modulo       47, 4         years, style       47, 4         years, style       47, 4         years, major, format       47, 4         years, major, format       48, 9         as location of line       6         colour configuration       51, 4	46 46 46 45 55 2 12 44 30 22 49 48 48 88 23
styles, marks and years, none $\dots$ 4 styles, marks and years, on line $\dots$ 4 styles, off line $\dots$ 4 styles, on line $\dots$ 6 styles, on line $vs$ . off line $\dots$ 4 styles, on line $vs$ . off line $\dots$ 4 timeline border $\dots$ 4 total height as function of timeline heigh and timeline border height $\dots$ 4 total width $\dots$ 4 types drawn by chronos $\dots$ 4 updating from $T_EX$ SE code $\dots$ 10 weird \chronosyeari in chronos style $\dots$ 4 years, modulo $\dots$ 47, 4 years, not modulo $\dots$ 47, 4 years, style $\dots$ 47, 4 years, style $\dots$ 47, 4 years, major, format $\dots$ 48 timeline border $\dots$ 48 as location of line $\dots$ 45 introduction to $\dots$ 45	46 46 46 45 45 52 t 24 43 52 22 49 48 48 82 53 51

timeline marks	
in off line colour <sup>†</sup>	19
upper subheadings	
	45
· •	45
placement relative to headings	12
use by chronos	67
using assigned colour during creation	59
whether to connect to timeline	68
year $\ldots$ $46, 9$	92
blues below $\dagger$	19
effects of configuration 10	00
J	50
first vs. first labelled	47
frequency of labelling	47
labels, rotated $\dagger$ 19,	19
marked at start $\ldots$	48
non-modulo configuration	47
rotate labels	48
test for major $\ldots$	48
unmarked	50
years	
adjusting chronos style defaults	17
	49
$\operatorname{cf.}$ bare marks $\ldots$ $\ldots$ $\ldots$ $\ldots$	48
chronos origin dependant on configuration	on
	48
1 ,	21
in example timeline <sup>†</sup>	5
J.	49
modulo step major year and step minor y	rear
r ····	12
	48
ENVIRONMENTS:	
chronos	10
0	12
	84
cf. code posted on $T_{EX}$ SE	4
	84
	84
introduction to	5
_/	11 50
0	$\frac{59}{83}$
1	00 11
tikzpicture	55
1	12
	$45^{12}$
8	$12^{+0}$
content of vinicine additions specification,	
Н	
hash (#)	93

K	
Key handlers:	
.chronos key maker	
tag left <sup>†</sup>	97
tag post†	97
	97
tag right <sup>†</sup>	
.chronos key maker	<i>97</i>
for style creation	97
.meaning to context	
use in chronos styles	96
use in blues below $\dagger$	89
KEYS:	
$\langle tag  angle$ /author	75
$\langle tag \rangle$ /chronos connector	75
$\langle tag \rangle$ /chronos connector+	75
$\langle tag \rangle$ /chronos connector'	75
$\langle tag \rangle$ /connection	74
1 01	
$\langle tag \rangle$ /connection+	74
$\langle tag \rangle$ /connection'	74
$\langle tag  angle$ /date font	76
$\langle tag  angle$ /full dates $\dots \dots \dots \dots \dots \dots$	73
$\langle tag \rangle$ /label	75
$\langle tag \rangle$ /label+	75
$\langle tag \rangle$ /label'	75
$\langle tag \rangle$ /line	74
$\langle tag \rangle$ /line+	74
$\langle tag \rangle$ /line'	74
$\langle tag \rangle$ /main text tag connector	75
$\langle tag \rangle$ /main text tag connector+	75
$\langle tag \rangle$ /main text tag connector'	75
	76
$\begin{array}{llllllllllllllllllllllllllllllllllll$	73
	73
$\langle tag \rangle$ /only years	
$\langle tag \rangle$ /rotate	76
$\langle tag \rangle$ /show eras	73 ~~
$\langle tag \rangle$ /text font	76
$\langle tag \rangle$ /text tag	74
$\langle tag  angle /$ text tag connector	75
$\langle tag  angle$ /text tag connector+	75
$\langle tag  angle$ /text tag connector'	75
$\langle tag  angle$ /text tag+ $\dots \dots \dots \dots \dots \dots \dots$	74
$\langle tag  angle$ /text tag' $\dots \dots \dots \dots \dots \dots$	74
$\langle tag \rangle$ /title	75
<pre>(tag)/title+</pre>	75
$\langle tag \rangle$ /title'	75
$\langle tag \rangle$ /without eras	73
$\langle tag \rangle$ /year	76
anchor	97
for vears	48
used as $TikZ$	68
will be overridden	48
at	40
	66
as required for \chronosmaintitle	66 01
if unset	81
in custom style†	97 06
trouble in custom <b>styles</b>	96

at	
at aux	
bce year label	
before drawing frame	
before drawing frame+	
before drawing frame'	
before headings	
before headings+	
before headings+	
before headings'	
caption	
ce year label	
century subheading	
century subheading+	
century subheading'	<b>56</b>
chronos connectors	0.0
<b>j</b>	80
chronos connectors	
chronos connectors+	
chronos connectors'	
chronos tikz	
chronos tikz outside bb	
chronos tikz outside bb+	
chronos tikz outside bb'	
chronos tikz+	
chronos tikz'	
circle texts	
color scheme	
colour scheme	<b>29</b>
connections	
set by every connections	
connections	
connections+	
connections'	
connectors	
connectors+	
connectors'	
copyleft	
copyleft+	78
copyleft/author	
copyleft'	75
copyright	75 <b>78</b>
	75 <b>78</b> <b>78</b>
copyright+	75            78            78            78
copyright/at	75            78            78            66
copyright/at	75            78            78            66            67
copyright/at copyright/author copyright'	75            78            78            66            67
<pre>copyright/at</pre>	$\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$
<pre>copyright/at</pre>	75            78            78            66            67            78
<pre>copyright/at</pre>	75            78            78            66            67            78            78            67            78            78            78            78
<pre>copyright/at</pre>	75          78          78          66          67          78          78          78          78          78          78          78          78
<pre>copyright/at</pre>	75          78          78          66          67          78          78          78          78          78          78          78          78          78          78          78          78          78          78
<pre>copyright/at</pre>	75          78          78          66          67          78          78          78          78          78          78          78          78          78          78          78          69          69          69
<pre>copyright/at</pre>	$\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$
<pre>copyright/at</pre>	$\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$
<pre>copyright/at</pre>	75          78          78          66          67          78          78          78          78          78          78          78          78          79          69          69          61          77         50, 70

event years on line	46
event/chronos connector	
set by every chronos connectors $\ldots$ .	80
event/connection	
set by every connections	80
event/connectors	63
event/line	
set by every lines	80
event/main text tag connector	
set by every main text tag connectors	81
event/name	63
event/text tag	
set by every text tags	80
event/text tag connector	
set by every text tag connectors	80
every chronos connectors	80
every chronos connectors+	80
every chronos connectors'	80
every connections	80
every connections+	80
every connections'	80
every event	82
every event+	82
every event'	82
every info	82
every info+	82
every info'	82
every life	82
every life+	82
every life'	82
every lines	80
every lines+	80
every lines'	80
every main text tag connectors	80
every main text tag connectors	80
every main text tag connectors'	80
every period	82
every period +	82
every period'	82
every text tag connectors	80
every text tag connectors	80
every text tag connectors'	80
every text tags	80
every text tags	80 80
every text tags'	80 80
	82
every theory	81
every theory circle circle	
every theory circle circle+	81 81
every theory circle circle'	81 01
every theory circle text	81
every theory circle text+	81
every theory circle text'	81
every theory+	82
every theory'	82
font	4.0
will be overridden	48

full dates	73
heading	<b>55</b>
heading+	<b>55</b>
heading'	<b>55</b>
headings style	57
headings style+	57
headings style'	57
info/at	
as required	66
info/caption	66
info/name	66
as required	66
info/text tag	
set by every text tags	80
key	31
labels	72
levels	12
level 1†	61
	98
making visible	98 44
placement	
placement if frame not using bounding box	45
u1†	61
levels	54
levels at	54
life	77
life/chronos connector	
set by every chronos connectors	80
life/connection	
set by every connections	80
life/connectors	61
life/line	
set by every lines	80
life/main text tag connector	
set by every main text tag connectors	81
life/name	61
life/text tag	
set by every text tags	80
life/text tag connector	
set by every text tag connectors	80
lines	
set by every lines	80
lines	<i>79</i>
lines+	<i>79</i>
lines'	<i>79</i>
main text tag connectors	
set by every main text tag connectors	81
main text tag connectors	80
main text tag connectors+	80
main text tag connectors'	80
main/frame	54
main/frame+	54
main/frame'	54
main/iidme	75
main/title+	75
main/title'	75
major step font	<b>50</b>
	00

name	
as required for $\chronosmaintitle$	66
as supporting chronos connect <sup>†</sup>	58
capitalisation	75
effect of ${\tt event}\ {\tt dates}\ {\tt split}\ {\rm on}\ {\rm use}\ {\rm of}\ .$	78
override for text tag content	. 71
prevent capitalisation	67
required for phantoms	. 71
use in assigned colour names	58
whether to capitalise	67
name	67
name content	75
effect of event dates split on use of	78
if unset	75
problematic markup	67
name content	71
no color rotation	<b>59</b>
no colour rotation	<b>59</b>
no simple color names	<b>60</b>
no simple colour names	<i>60</i>
only text	73
only years	73
period	77
period/chronos connector	
set by every chronos connectors	80
period/connection	
set by every connections	80
period/connectors	64
-	-
period/dates_content	8
-	. 8
period/line	
<pre>period/line   set by every lines</pre>	80
<pre>period/line   set by every lines period/line+</pre>	
<pre>period/line   set by every lines period/line+ period/main text tag connector</pre>	80
<pre>period/line   set by every lines period/line+ period/main text tag connector   set by every main text tag connectors</pre>	80 64
<pre>period/line   set by every lines period/line+ period/main text tag connector   set by every main text tag connectors period/name</pre>	80 64 81
<pre>period/line   set by every lines period/line+ period/main text tag connector   set by every main text tag connectors period/name   as mandatory for ongoing</pre>	80 64
<pre>period/line   set by every lines period/line+ period/main text tag connector   set by every main text tag connectors period/name   as mandatory for ongoing period/text tag</pre>	80 64 81 64
<pre>period/line   set by every lines period/line+ period/main text tag connector   set by every main text tag connectors period/name   as mandatory for ongoing period/text tag   set by every text tags</pre>	80 64 81 64
<pre>period/line   set by every lines period/line+ period/main text tag connector   set by every main text tag connectors period/name   as mandatory for ongoing period/text tag   set by every text tags period/text tag connector</pre>	80 64 81 64 80
<pre>period/line   set by every lines period/line+ period/main text tag connector   set by every main text tag connectors period/name   as mandatory for ongoing period/text tag   set by every text tags period/text tag connector   set by every text tag connectors</pre>	80 64 81 64
<pre>period/line   set by every lines period/line+ period/main text tag connector   set by every main text tag connectors period/name   as mandatory for ongoing period/text tag   set by every text tags period/text tag connector   set by every text tag connectors place above</pre>	80 64 81 64 80 80 <b>69</b>
<pre>period/line set by every lines period/line+ period/main text tag connector set by every main text tag connectors period/name as mandatory for ongoing period/text tag set by every text tags period/text tag connector set by every text tag connectors place above redefinition in tag-specific contexts</pre>	80 64 81 64 80 80 <b>69</b> 97
<pre>period/line   set by every lines period/line+ period/main text tag connector   set by every main text tag connectors period/name   as mandatory for ongoing period/text tag   set by every text tags period/text tag connector   set by every text tag connectors place above redefinition in tag-specific contexts rotate all colors</pre>	80 64 81 64 80 80 69 97 59
<pre>period/line   set by every lines period/line+ period/main text tag connector   set by every main text tag connectors period/name   as mandatory for ongoing period/text tag   set by every text tags period/text tag connector   set by every text tag connectors place above rotate all colours </pre>	80 64 81 64 80 80 69 97 59 59
<pre>period/line   set by every lines period/line+ period/main text tag connector   set by every main text tag connectors period/name   as mandatory for ongoing period/text tag   set by every text tags period/text tag connector   set by every text tag connectors place above rotate all colours rotate no colors</pre>	<ul> <li>80</li> <li>64</li> <li>81</li> <li>64</li> <li>80</li> <li>80</li> <li>69</li> <li>97</li> <li>59</li> <li>59</li> <li>59</li> </ul>
<pre>period/line   set by every lines period/line+ period/main text tag connector   set by every main text tag connectors period/name   as mandatory for ongoing period/text tag   set by every text tags period/text tag connector   set by every text tag connectors place above rotate all colors rotate no colors rotate no colours</pre>	80 64 81 64 80 80 69 97 59 59 59 59
<pre>period/line set by every lines period/line+ period/main text tag connector set by every main text tag connectors period/name as mandatory for ongoing period/text tag set by every text tags period/text tag connector set by every text tag connectors place above rotate all colors rotate no colors show eras</pre>	80 64 81 64 80 80 69 97 59 59 59 59 73
<pre>period/line set by every lines period/line+ period/main text tag connector set by every main text tag connectors period/name as mandatory for ongoing period/text tag set by every text tags period/text tag connector set by every text tag connectors place above rotate all colors rotate no colors show eras special date</pre>	80 64 81 64 80 69 97 59 59 59 59 73 71
<pre>period/line set by every lines period/line+ period/main text tag connector set by every main text tag connectors period/name as mandatory for ongoing period/text tag set by every text tags period/text tag connector set by every text tag connectors place above rotate all colors rotate no colors show eras special date </pre>	80 64 81 64 80 80 69 97 59 59 59 59 73
<pre>period/line   set by every lines period/line+ period/main text tag connector   set by every main text tag connectors period/name   as mandatory for ongoing period/text tag   set by every text tags period/text tag connector   set by every text tag connectors place above rotate all colors rotate no colors show eras special date step major year</pre>	80 64 81 64 80 80 69 97 59 59 59 59 59 73 71 31
<pre>period/line   set by every lines period/line+ period/main text tag connector   set by every main text tag connectors period/name   as mandatory for ongoing period/text tag   set by every text tags period/text tag connector   set by every text tag connectors place above rotate all colors rotate all colors rotate no colors show eras special date specification step major year   years, modulo</pre>	80 64 81 64 80 69 97 59 59 59 59 73 71
<pre>period/line set by every lines period/line+ period/main text tag connector set by every main text tag connectors period/name as mandatory for ongoing period/text tag set by every text tags period/text tag connector set by every text tag connectors place above rotate all colors rotate all colors rotate no colors show eras specification step major year years, modulo step minor year</pre>	80 64 81 64 80 69 97 59 59 59 59 73 71 31 47
<pre>period/line set by every lines period/line+ period/main text tag connector set by every main text tag connectors period/name as mandatory for ongoing period/text tag set by every text tags period/text tag connector set by every text tag connectors place above rotate all colors rotate all colours rotate no colors show eras special date step major year years, modulo </pre>	80 64 81 64 80 69 97 59 59 59 59 59 73 71 31 47
<pre>period/line+ period/main text tag connector set by every main text tag connectors period/name as mandatory for ongoing period/text tag set by every text tags period/text tag connector set by every text tag connectors place above rotate all colors rotate all colors rotate all colours rotate no colors show eras special date step major year years, modulo subheading</pre>	80 64 81 64 80 69 97 59 59 59 59 59 73 71 31 47 47 56
<pre>period/line set by every lines period/line+ period/main text tag connector set by every main text tag connectors period/name as mandatory for ongoing period/text tag set by every text tags period/text tag connector set by every text tag connectors place above rotate all colors rotate all colours rotate no colors show eras special date step major year years, modulo </pre>	80 64 81 64 80 69 97 59 59 59 59 59 73 71 31 47

subheadings style	57
subheadings style+	57
subheadings style'	57
tag anchor	
as anchor $\ldots$	68
in custom style † $\dots$	97
trouble in custom styles	96
tag anchor	<b>68</b>
$\langle tag \rangle$ /chronos connector	79
$\langle tag  angle$ /chronos connector+	79
$\langle tag  angle$ /chronos connector'	79
$\langle tag \rangle$ /connection	
$\langle tag \rangle$ /connection+	
$\langle tag \rangle$ /connection'	
$\langle tag \rangle$ /line	79
$\langle tag \rangle$ /line+ 74,	79
$\langle tag \rangle$ /line' 74,	79
$\langle tag \rangle$ /main text tag connector75,75,	80
$\langle tag \rangle$ /main text tag connector+ 75,	80
$\langle tag \rangle$ /main text tag connector' 75,	80
$\langle tag \rangle / tag$	74
$\langle tag \rangle / tag + \ldots 74,$	74
$\langle tag \rangle / tag' \dots 74,$	74
$\langle tag \rangle$ /text tag	81
$\langle tag \rangle$ /text tag connector	80
$\langle tag \rangle$ /text tag connector+	80
$\langle tag  angle$ /text tag connector'	80
$\langle tag \rangle$ /text tag+	74
$\langle tag \rangle$ /text tag'	74
text content	
problematic markup	67
text content	71
text tag connectors	
set by every text tag connectors $\ldots$	80
8	
	<i>80</i>
0	80
0	
0	80
text tag connectors'	80
text tags connectors' text tags set by every text tags text tags	<b>80</b> <b>80</b> <b>80</b> <b>79</b>
text tags set by every text tags	80 80 80 79 79
text tags connectors' text tags set by every text tags text tags	<ul> <li>80</li> <li>80</li> <li>79</li> <li>79</li> <li>79</li> <li>79</li> </ul>
<pre>text tag connectors' text tags set by every text tags text tags text tags+ text tags' theory</pre>	80 80 79 79 79 79 79
<pre>text tag connectors' text tags set by every text tags text tags text tags+ text tags' theory theory circle/at</pre>	<ul> <li>80</li> <li>80</li> <li>79</li> <li>79</li> <li>79</li> <li>79</li> </ul>
<pre>text tag connectors' text tags set by every text tags text tags text tags+ text tags' theory theory circle/at theory circle/name</pre>	80 80 79 79 79 79 77 65
text tags connectors' text tags set by every text tags text tags text tags+ text tags' theory circle/at theory circle/name as mandatory	<ul> <li>80</li> <li>80</li> <li>79</li> <li>79</li> <li>79</li> <li>77</li> <li>65</li> <li>65</li> </ul>
text tags connectors' text tags set by every text tags text tags text tags+ text tags' theory circle/at theory circle/name as mandatory theory/at	80 80 79 79 79 79 77 65
text tag connectors' text tags set by every text tags text tags text tags+ text tags' theory theory circle/at theory circle/name as mandatory theory/at theory/chronos connector	<ul> <li>80</li> <li>80</li> <li>79</li> <li>79</li> <li>79</li> <li>77</li> <li>65</li> <li>65</li> <li>65</li> </ul>
<pre>text tag connectors' text tags set by every text tags text tags text tags+ text tags' theory circle/at theory circle/at theory circle/name as mandatory theory/at theory/chronos connector set by every chronos connectors</pre>	<ul> <li>80</li> <li>80</li> <li>79</li> <li>79</li> <li>79</li> <li>77</li> <li>65</li> <li>65</li> </ul>
<pre>text tag connectors' text tags set by every text tags text tags text tags+ text tags' theory circle/at theory circle/at theory circle/name as mandatory theory/at theory/chronos connector set by every chronos connectors theory/connection</pre>	<ul> <li>80</li> <li>80</li> <li>79</li> <li>79</li> <li>79</li> <li>77</li> <li>65</li> <li>65</li> <li>65</li> <li>80</li> </ul>
<pre>text tag connectors'</pre>	<ul> <li>80</li> <li>80</li> <li>79</li> <li>79</li> <li>79</li> <li>77</li> <li>65</li> <li>65</li> <li>65</li> <li>80</li> <li>80</li> </ul>
<pre>text tag connectors'</pre>	<ul> <li>80</li> <li>80</li> <li>79</li> <li>79</li> <li>79</li> <li>77</li> <li>65</li> <li>65</li> <li>65</li> <li>80</li> </ul>
<pre>text tag connectors'</pre>	<ul> <li>80</li> <li>80</li> <li>79</li> <li>79</li> <li>79</li> <li>77</li> <li>65</li> <li>65</li> <li>65</li> <li>80</li> <li>80</li> <li>65</li> </ul>
<pre>text tag connectors'</pre>	<ul> <li>80</li> <li>80</li> <li>79</li> <li>79</li> <li>79</li> <li>79</li> <li>765</li> <li>655</li> <li>80</li> <li>80</li> <li>655</li> <li>81</li> </ul>
<pre>text tag connectors'</pre>	<ul> <li>80</li> <li>80</li> <li>79</li> <li>79</li> <li>79</li> <li>77</li> <li>65</li> <li>65</li> <li>65</li> <li>80</li> <li>80</li> <li>65</li> </ul>

theory/text tag	
set by every text tags 80	0
theory/text tag connector	~
set by every text tag connectors 80	U
KeyFont timeline line caps 102	<b>?</b>
timeline	2
arrow tips 102	2
timeline	
timeline bce label 32	
timeline ce label	8
timeline config 8	5
timeline config 80	5
timeline config+ 8	5
timeline config+ 80	5
timeline config' 8	5
destructiveness 8	5
timeline config' 8	5
timeline/conditional timeline arrow . $90$	-
use in blues below <sup>†</sup> 89	
timeline/conditional timeline arrow . $g_{\star}$	
timeline/do timeline arrow $\ldots \ldots 94$	
timeline/do timeline arrow	
timeline/eras font 50	
timeline/minor step font 50	0
timeline/no timeline arrow	
following chronos styles	_
timeline/no timeline arrow 53	
timeline/step divisions 40	8
timeline/step from year	-
and non-modulo years† 4	
timeline/step from year	
timeline/step major year 47, 4	
timeline/step major year 4' timeline/step major years 4'	
timeline/step major years 47 timeline/step minor year 47,47	
timeline/step minor year 41, 4 timeline/step minor year 41	
timeline/step minor years 4	
timeline/step year 4	
timeline/step year 4	
timeline/step years	
timeline/timeline all marks 49	
timeline/timeline bare mark	
timeline/timeline border	
timeline/timeline border+ 55	
timeline/timeline border' 55	
timeline/timeline line	2
timeline/timeline line+ 52	2
timeline/timeline line' 52	2
timeline/timeline mark	9
timeline/timeline minor mark 4	
timeline/timeline year 89	9
timeline/timeline year 48	8
timeline/timeline years anchor 95	2
timeline/timeline years anchor 48	
without eras 73	3

xshift	 97
yshift	 67

# $\mathbf{L}$

LAYERS:
adding to appropriate
background 15,84
$vs.$ chronos background $\ldots \ldots \ldots 41$
choosing appropriate $\dots \dots \dots$
chronos background $\dots \dots \dots 15, 83$
$vs.$ background $\ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots 41$
chronos foreground $\ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots 15,84$
chronos middle ground $\dots \dots \dots 15, 83$
chronos middle ground layer $\dots \dots 19$
chronos overlay 15, 84, 84
connections on 41
control over 4
lines on 41
main $\ldots \ldots 15, 41$
timeline/border on
timeline/timeline on
line caps 102

### $\mathbf{M}$

MACROS:
\baselineskip $\dots \dots \dots$
\bcelabel 38, 102, 102
\bceyearlabel 37, 102, 102
\celabel 38, 102, 102
\ceyearlabel 37, 102, 102
\chronosbaselineskip $\dots \dots \dots 55$
$\column{black} \column{black} \col$
$\chronos@borderheight$
$\compose 0.000 \compose 0.0000 \compose 0.00$
\chronoscopyleft 66,76
configuration, local
name optional for
\chronoscopyright 66,76
configuration, local $\dots \dots \dots$
invoked by $\chronoscopyleft \dots 67$
name optional for $\dots \dots \dots$
\chronosevent $\dots \dots 63$
configuration, local $\dots \dots \dots$
method allowing use of key-value interface in
$\dots \dots $
method incompatible with key-value version of
$\dots \dots $
renaming $T_{EX}$ SE version $\dots \dots \dots$
using assigned colour in 59
$\chronos@height$ 102
\chronosinfo 66
configuration, local $\dots \dots \dots$
$\chronoslegacyevent$
$\chronoslegacyperiod$
\chronoslife 14, <i>61</i>
configuration, local
in example timeline <sup>†</sup> $\dots \dots 5$

using assigned colour in 59
$\verb+chronos@llinell@yshift 102$
\chronosmaintitle 66
configuration, local
name optional for
\chronosnewcolorscheme
\chronosnewcolourscheme 86, 86
\chronosperiod $\dots \dots 64$
configuration, local 67
method allowing use of key-value interface in
$\dots \dots $
method incompatible with key-value version of
renaming $T_EX$ SE version $\dots \dots \dots$
using assigned colour in 59
\chronosset 29
effect on \chronoscopyright 76
effect on timeline $\dots \dots \dots$
not used <sup>†</sup> $\dots$ 100
purpose 29
setting normally local keys in
showing options $\dots \dots \dots$
when (not) to use in document body $\dots 30$
\chronosset* 30
\chronosshowcolor 99
\chronosshowcolor* 99
\chronosshowcolour 99
\chronosshowcolour* 99
$\verb chronosshowcolour*$
\chronosshowcolour*
\chronosshowcolour*
\chronosshowcolour*
\chronosshowcolour*         99           \chronosshowfeatures         100, 100           \chronosshowpreset         100, 100           \chronostheory         64           configuration, local         67           using assigned colour in         59
\chronosshowcolour*       99         \chronosshowfeatures       100, 100         \chronosshowpreset       100, 100         \chronostheory       64         configuration, local       67         using assigned colour in       59         \chronostheorycircle       65
\chronosshowcolour*       99         \chronosshowfeatures       100, 100         \chronosshowpreset       100, 100         \chronostheory       64         configuration, local       67         using assigned colour in       59         \chronostheorycircle       65         configuration, local       67
\chronosshowcolour*       99         \chronosshowfeatures       100, 100         \chronosshowpreset       100, 100         \chronostheory       64         configuration, local       67         using assigned colour in       59         \chronostheorycircle       65         configuration, local       67         \chronostheorycircle       67         \chronos@width       102
\chronosshowcolour*       99         \chronosshowfeatures       100, 100         \chronosshowpreset       100, 100         \chronostheory       64         configuration, local       67         using assigned colour in       59         \chronostheorycircle       65         configuration, local       67         \chronos@width       102         \chronos@yearbce       102, 102
\chronosshowcolour*       99         \chronosshowfeatures       100, 100         \chronosshowpreset       100, 100         \chronostheory       64         configuration, local       67         using assigned colour in       59         \chronostheorycircle       65         configuration, local       67         \chronos@width       102         \chronos@yearbce       102, 102         \chronos@yearce       102, 102
\chronosshowcolour*       99         \chronosshowfeatures       100, 100         \chronosshowpreset       100, 100         \chronostheory       64         configuration, local       67         using assigned colour in       59         \chronostheorycircle       65         configuration, local       67         \chronos@width       102         \chronos@yearbce       102, 102         \chronosgeari       92
\chronosshowcolour*       99         \chronosshowfeatures       100, 100         \chronosshowpreset       100, 100         \chronostheory       64         configuration, local       67         using assigned colour in       59         \chronostheorycircle       65         configuration, local       67         \chronos@width       102         \chronos@yearbce       102, 102         \chronosyeari       92         use in blues below       89
\chronosshowcolour*       99         \chronosshowfeatures       100, 100         \chronosshowpreset       100, 100         \chronostheory       64         configuration, local       67         using assigned colour in       59         \chronostheorycircle       65         configuration, local       67         \chronos@width       102         \chronos@yearbce       102, 102         \chronos@yearice       102, 102         \chronosyeari       92         use in blues below       89         conditionally defined       89
\chronosshowcolour*       99         \chronosshowfeatures       100, 100         \chronosshowpreset       100, 100         \chronostheory       64         configuration, local       67         using assigned colour in       59         \chronostheorycircle       65         configuration, local       67         \chronos@width       102         \chronos@yearbce       102, 102         \chronos@yearce       102, 102         \chronosyeari       92         use in blues below       89         conditionally defined       102         \celabel <sup>†</sup> 102
\chronosshowcolour*       99         \chronosshowfeatures       100, 100         \chronosshowpreset       100, 100         \chronostheory       64         configuration, local       67         using assigned colour in       59         \chronostheorycircle       65         configuration, local       67         \chronos@width       102         \chronos@yearbce       102, 102         \chronos@yearce       102, 102         \chronosyeari       92         use in blues below       89         conditionally defined       102         \celabel†       102         conditionally used       102
\chronosshowcolour*       99         \chronosshowfeatures       100, 100         \chronosshowpreset       100, 100         \chronostheory       64         configuration, local       67         using assigned colour in       59         \chronostheorycircle       65         configuration, local       67         \chronos@width       102         \chronos@yearbce       102, 102         \chronos@yearce       102, 102         \chronosyeari       92         use in blues below       89         conditionally defined       102         \celabel†       102         \uishape†       102
\chronosshowcolour*       99         \chronosshowfeatures       100, 100         \chronosshowpreset       100, 100         \chronostheory       64         configuration, local       67         using assigned colour in       59         \chronostheorycircle       65         configuration, local       67         \chronos@width       102         \chronos@yearbce       102, 102         \chronos@yearce       102, 102         \chronos@yeari       92         use in blues below       89         conditionally defined       102         \celabel†       102         \uishape†       102         \CSFreeBoolean       103
\chronosshowcolour*       99         \chronosshowfeatures       100, 100         \chronosshowpreset       100, 100         \chronostheory       64         configuration, local       67         using assigned colour in       59         \chronostheorycircle       65         configuration, local       67         \chronos@width       102         \chronos@yearbce       102, 102         \chronos@yearce       102, 102         \chronoslept       102         \chronoslept       102         \chronoslept       102         \chronoslept       102         \chronoslept       102         \chronoslept       103         \conditionally used       103         \cSlet       103
\chronosshowcolour*       99         \chronosshowfeatures       100, 100         \chronosshowpreset       100, 100         \chronostheory       64         configuration, local       67         using assigned colour in       59         \chronostheorycircle       65         configuration, local       67         \chronos@width       102         \chronos@yearbce       102, 102         \chronos@yearce       102, 102         \chronosly used       102         \cslet       103         \CSFreeBoolean       103         \cslet       103
\chronosshowcolour*       99         \chronosshowfeatures       100, 100         \chronosshowpreset       100, 100         \chronostheory       64         configuration, local       67         using assigned colour in       59         \chronostheorycircle       65         configuration, local       67         \chronos@width       102         \chronos@yearbce       102, 102         \chronos@yearce       102, 102         \chronoslyeari       92         use in blues below       89         conditionally defined       102         \cSFreeBoolean       103         \CSIet       103         \cslet       103         \csletCS       103
\chronosshowcolour*       99         \chronosshowfeatures       100, 100         \chronosshowpreset       100, 100         \chronostheory       64         configuration, local       67         using assigned colour in       59         \chronostheorycircle       65         configuration, local       67         \chronos@width       102, 102         \chronos@yearbce       102, 102         \chronos@yearce       102, 102         \chronoslyeari       92         use in blues below       89         conditionally defined       102         \clistet       103         \CSFreeBoolean       103         \cslet       103         \csletCS       103         \csletcs       103
\chronosshowcolour*       99         \chronosshowfeatures       100, 100         \chronosshowpreset       100, 100         \chronostheory       64         configuration, local       67         using assigned colour in       59         \chronostheorycircle       65         configuration, local       67         \chronos@width       102, 102         \chronos@yearbce       102, 102         \chronos@yearce       102, 102         \chronoslegearce       102         \chronoslegearce       102         \chronoslegearce       102         \chronoslegearce       102         \chronoslegearce       103         \cslets       103
\chronosshowcolour*       99         \chronosshowfeatures       100, 100         \chronosshowpreset       100, 100         \chronostheory       64         configuration, local       67         using assigned colour in       59         \chronostheorycircle       65         configuration, local       67         \chronos@width       102         \chronos@yearbce       102, 102         \chronos@yearce       102, 102         \chronoslegearce       102, 102         \chronoslegearce       102, 102         \chronoslegearce       102         \conditionally defined       \celabelt         \celabelt       103         \cslet       103         \cslet       103         \cslet       103         \cslet       103         \csletcs       103         \csletcs <t< td=""></t<>
\chronosshowcolour*       99         \chronosshowfeatures       100, 100         \chronosshowpreset       100, 100         \chronostheory       64         configuration, local       67         using assigned colour in       59         \chronostheorycircle       65         configuration, local       67         \chronos@width       102         \chronos@yearbce       102, 102         \chronos@yearce       102, 102         \chronoslegearce       102, 102         \chronoslegearce       102, 102         \chronoslegearce       102         \chronoslegearce       102         \chronoslegearce       102         \chronoslegearce       102         \chronoslegearce       102         \chronoslegearce       103         \csletcs       103         \csletcs       103
\chronosshowcolour*       99         \chronosshowfeatures       100, 100         \chronosshowpreset       100, 100         \chronostheory       64         configuration, local       67         using assigned colour in       59         \chronostheorycircle       65         configuration, local       67         \chronos@width       102         \chronos@yearbce       102, 102         \chronos@yearce       102         \chronos@yearce       102         \chronos@yearce       102         \chronos@yearce       102         \chronos@yearce       102
\chronosshowcolour*       99         \chronosshowfeatures       100, 100         \chronosshowpreset       100, 100         \chronostheory       64         configuration, local       67         using assigned colour in       59         \chronostheorycircle       65         configuration, local       67         \chronos@width       102, 102         \chronos@yearbce       102, 102         \chronos@yearce       102         \conditionally defined       \celabel†         \csletcs       103         \csletcs       103
\chronosshowcolour*       99         \chronosshowfeatures       100, 100         \chronosshowpreset       100, 100         \chronostheory       64         configuration, local       67         using assigned colour in       59         \chronostheorycircle       65         configuration, local       67         \chronos@width       102         \chronos@yearbce       102, 102         \chronos@yearce       102         \chronos@yearce       102         \chronos@yearce       102         \chronos@yearce       102         \chronos@yearce       102

\IfCSExistF	103
\IfCSExistT	103
\IfCSExistTF	103
\IfCSFreeF	103
\IfCSFreeT	103
\IfCSFreeTF	103
\ifcsundef	103
\ifdef	103
\IfExistF	103
\IfExistT	103
\IfExistTF	103
\IfFreeF	103
\IfFreeT	103
\IfFreeTF	103
\IfIntCompareF	103
\IfIntCompareT	103
\IfIntCompareTF	103
\ifnumcomp	103
\ifundef	103
\IntCompareBoolean	103
\LegacyBoolean	103
\lineyshift 70, 74,	102
\parhad	104
\plstyle	103
\sishape	103
\svnauthor	75
\svnFullAuthor	76
\textsi	103
\textui	103
throwaway definition	
\tempa <sup>†</sup>	102
\timelineborderht 44,	-
\timelineht	
\timelinewd	
\tlstyle	102
\uishape	103
\undef	103
\Undefine	103
use of Welsh	100
	102
\byw	102
-	102
\digwyddiad	
\gwybodaeth	102
\parhad	102
\prifdeitl	102
\theori	102

## Ν

NODES:

caption	
as component of info	66
caption $\langle name \rangle$	
as component of info	66
chronos connector leslie lamport†	61
chronos connector $\langle name  angle$	
as component of event	64

as component of life and period	63
chronos year - $\langle YYYY \rangle$	48
chronos year $\langle YYYY \rangle$	48
connector leslie lamport0 <sup>†</sup>	61
connector leslie lamport0 $^{\dagger}$ connector leslie lamport1 $^{\dagger}$	61
connector $\langle name \rangle n$	
as component of event	64
as component of life and period	63
as component of theory	65
label above $\langle name \rangle$	
as component of theory circle	65
label below $\langle name \rangle$	
as component of theory circle	65
level -2†	68
level 1 <sup>†</sup>	61
main connector	01
as component of theory	65
main connector leslie lamport†	61
main connector $\langle name \rangle$	01
as component of event	64
as component of life and period	63
as component of theory	65
$\langle name \rangle$	00
as component of copyleft and copyright	67
as component of main/main title	66
as component of theory circle	65
tag leslie lamport <sup>†</sup>	61
tag $\langle name \rangle$	01
as component of event	64
as component of info	66
as component of life and period	63
as component of theory	65
text tag	00
as component of copyleft/copyright	67
	66
as component of info	
as component of main	66
as component of theory	65
text tag connector	C.F
as component of theory	65
u1†	61

## Р

PACKAGE OPTIONS:
no simple color names $\ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots 10$
no simple colour names $\ldots \ldots \ldots 10$
simple color names $\ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots 10$
simple colour names $\ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots 10$
PACKAGES:
calc $\ldots \ldots 10$
chronos 1
adjustments required of styles
chronos-lib-colschemes $\ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots 10$
chronos-lib-styles $\ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots 10$
dependencies $\dots \dots \dots$
fallback macro definitions 103
incorrect assignment of colour names $\dots$ 94

internal macro names 102, 102
internal macros conditionally defined $\dots$ 102
internal macros defined locally 102
memoize-ready
replacements for etoolbox macros 103
typesetting a timeline <sup>†</sup> 5
chronos-lib-colschemes 10
chronos-lib-styles
chronosys
etoolbox 10, 103
as dependency 102
compatibility of chronos replacements 102
macros with chronos analogues 103
expl3 10, 29, 103
•
compatibility 102
PGF 1
pgfcalendar 38
pgfcalendar 10
pgfkeys 31
pgfmath
$\langle value \rangle$ ' + not parsed by 33
$\langle value \rangle$ ' - not parsed by 34
$\langle value \rangle$ ' not parsed by $\dots \dots \dots \dots 33$
pgfmath $\ldots$ 33
$\langle value \rangle$ parsed by $\dots \dots \dots \dots \dots \dots \dots \dots \dots \dots 33$
$\langle value \rangle$ + parsed by
$\langle value \rangle$ - parsed by $\dots \dots \dots \dots \dots \dots \dots \dots \dots \dots 34$
svn-prov
TikZ 1
tikz 10
xcolor
xparse 10
PGF/TIKZ LIBRARIES:
arrows
compatibility 102
arrows.meta 10
compatibility 102
backgrounds 15
backgrounds 10
calc 10 decorations.text 10
external
cf. memoize
incompatibility 84
fit 10
fixedpointarithmetic 10
positioning 10
shadows
Programmes:
perl 84
python 84

5
STYLES:
$\langle tag  angle$ /title lines
chronos connect $\ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots $
chronos create chronos connector $\dots$ $83$
chronos create text tag connector $83$
chronos mark line $\ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots $ 83
chronos text tag $\ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots $ 83
custom
tag left† 1,96
tag post $\dagger$ 1, 96, 98
tag right $\dagger$ 1, 96
event date split $\dots \dots 78$
event year on line $\ldots \ldots \ldots 50$
matching connection $\dots \dots \dots$
on chronos background layer $\dots$ 12
on chronos background layer 83
on chronos foreground layer 12
on chronos foreground layer 84
on chronos middle ground layer 83
on chronos overlay layer 98
on chronos overlay layer 84
placeholder lines
show coord
show coord
show coordinate
show node coord
show node coord
tag right 96
timeline/era switch off line $\ldots \ldots 50$

#### $\mathbf{T}$

TAGS:	
-specific settings	
activated by installation under /chronos	97
copyleft	66
copyright	6 <b>6</b>
event	63
info	6 <b>6</b>
life	<i>61</i>
main	66
period	64
theory	64
theory circle	65
copyleft	78
as lacking connectors	9
at mandatory	67
availability of keys	66
components of	67
configuration, global	77
configuration, local	67
configuration, local/global	72
create element of tag type	67
default name	67
elements belonging to	14
options (summary)	62

use of <b>name</b> in content of	67
copyright	78
as lacking connectors	9
at mandatory	67
availability of keys	66
components of	67
configuration, global	77
configuration, local	67
configuration, local/global	72
create element of tag type	66
default name	67
elements belonging to	14
options (summary)	62
use of name in content of	67
event	
as connectable to other elements	82
as primary element	12
as supporting connectors	9
assignment of colours to elements of tag type	58
at optional	67
availability of keys	63
chronos connector	64
colour lists for colour rotation	58
colour rotation	94
colour rotation (above)	60
colour rotation (below)	60
colours, using	82
components of	64
configuration, global	82
configuration, local	67
configuration, local/global	72
connection	64
connectors	64
connectors, creating additional	68
create element of tag type	63
	70
date formatting	36
default placement (lines on line)	21
Diamond Sutrat	6
effect of colour scheme in chronoleg <sup>†</sup>	17
effect of simple colour names on	10
holistic treatment of configuration	10 79
~	19 6
Jikji†	0 30
	50 64
main connector	64
	04 79
no style options (summary)	62
plain arrow <sup>†</sup>	24
-	68
point connected to timeline Publication of <i>Diamond Sutra</i> <sup>†</sup>	60 6
- · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	0 78
	78 78
split text tags, style	78 21
style for elements of type	21 82
styles, using support for event years on line	
support for overt verne 1	46

tout tog	64
text tag	~ -
text tag connector	64
use of name in content of	67
use of single date for placement	14
info	
as case of colour assignment without colour	ro
ũ.	
tation	94
as lacking connectors	9
as primary element	12
as standalone	14
assignment of colours to elements of tag type	58
at mandatory	67
availability of keys	66
colours, using	82
components of	66
configuration, global $\ldots \ldots \ldots 77$ ,	82
configuration, local	67
configuration, local/global	72
	66
create element of tag type	~ ~
effect of simple colour names on $\ldots$ .	10
options (summary)	62
setting caption	72
style of caption	75
styles, using	82
	-
use of name in content of	67
life	
as connectable to other elements $\ldots \ldots$	82
as basis for levels $\ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots 5$ ,	54
as example of tag context	59
as prefix <sup>†</sup>	32
	12
as primary element	
as supporting <b>connectors</b>	9
assignment of colours to elements of tag type	58
at optional	67
at aux	68
availability of keys	61
Bi Sheng <sup>†</sup>	6
chronos connector	63
colour lists for colour rotation	58
colour names $assigned to donald knuth \dagger$	58
colour rotation	58
colour rotation (above)	60
colour rotation (below)	60
colours of the rainbow <sup>†</sup>	58
colours, using	
components of	82
	82 63
configuration, global	82
configuration, global $\dots \dots \dots 77$ ,	82 63
configuration, global	82 63 82 67
configuration, global77,configuration, localconfiguration, local/global	82 63 82 67 72
configuration, global77,configuration, localconfiguration, local/globalconfiguration, local/globalconnection	82 63 82 67 72 63
configuration, global77,configuration, local	82 63 82 67 72 63 63
configuration, global77,configuration, local	$82 \\ 63 \\ 82 \\ 67 \\ 72 \\ 63 \\ 63 \\ 68$
configuration, global77,configuration, local77,configuration, local/globalconfiguration, local/globalconnectionconnectorsconnectorsconnectors, creating additionalcreate element of tag typeconnectors	82 63 82 67 72 63 63 68 61
configuration, global77,configuration, local77,configuration, local/globalconfiguration, local/globalconnectionconnectorsconnectorsconnectors, creating additionalcreate element of tag typeconnectors	$82 \\ 63 \\ 82 \\ 67 \\ 72 \\ 63 \\ 63 \\ 68$
configuration, global77,configuration, local77,configuration, local/global	82 63 82 67 72 63 63 63 68 61 36
configuration, global77,configuration, local77,configuration, local/globalconfiguration, local/globalconnectionconnectorsconnectorsconnectors, creating additionalcreate element of tag typeconnectors	82 63 82 67 72 63 63 68 61

dates default placement (lines on line)	70 21
D IIV (IIIes on IIIe)	
Donald Knuth†	7
effect of simple colour names on	10
highlighted by colour scheme in chronoleg <sup>†</sup>	17
line	63
main connector	63
options (summary) $\ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots$	62
plain arrow $\dagger$	24
point connected to timeline	68
split text tags unsupported	78
styles, using	82
text tag	63
text tag connector	63
use of name in content of	67
use of two dates for placement	14
main	
at mandatory	67
availability of keys	66
availability of Reys	66
components of main title	
configuration, global	77
configuration, local	67
configuration, local/global $\ldots \ldots \ldots$	72
default name for main title	67
elements belonging to	14
no associated list of properties 1	00
options (summary)	62
style for main title	75
use of name in content of	67
period	
as connectable to other elements	82
as primary element	12
as supporting connectors	
assignment of colours to elements of tag type	58
at optional	67
at aux	68
at aux	64
availability of keys	63
chronos connector	
colour lists for colour rotation	58
colour rotation	58
colour rotation (above)	60
colour rotation $(below)$	60
colours, using	82
components of	63
configuration, global 77,	82
configuration, local	67
configuration, local/global	72
connection	63
connectors	63
connectors, creating additional	68
create element of tag type	64
date formatting	36
date ranges	36
date specifications, equivalent	30 70
	70 70
dates default placement (lines on line)	70 21
deraunt pracement (IInes on IIne)	21

effect of colour scheme in chronoleg $\dagger$	17
effect of simple colour names on	10
last position set globally	30
	63
	63
mandatory keys for completed	64
mandatory keys for ongoing	64
	62
plain arrow†	24
point connected to timeline	68
representation on timeline	64
split text tags unsupported	78
	82
	63
	63
use of name in content of	67
use of two dates for placement	14
WoOdBlOcK pRiNtInG <sup>†</sup>	8
Woodblock Printing <sup>†</sup>	8
theory	
$T_FX^{\dagger}$	8
as connectable	64
as connectable to other elements	82
as primary element	12
as supporting connectors	9
assignment of colours to elements of tag type	58
at optional	67
	65
cf. non-connectable elements	14
	58
	82
	65
	82
configuration, local	67
configuration, local/global	72
connecting multiple people to	9
	68
create element of tag type $\ldots$	65
cronoleg	7
	65
effect of simple colour names on	10
metafont <sup>†</sup>	58
	62
styles, using	82
text tags dateless	67
use of name in content of	67
using default colour lists as tag-specific $\dots$	59
theory circle	
as lacking connectors	9
as primary element	12
as standalone	14
at mandatory	67
availability of keys	65
common style for labels	75
	65
configuration, global	

configuration, local	67
configuration, local/global	72
configuring base ring	81
non-use of name in	67
options (summary)	62
slowness	14